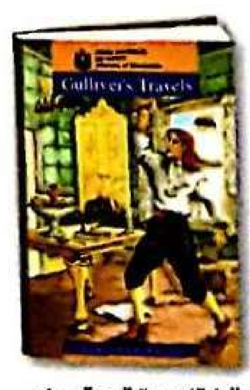
GEM

English

LANGUAGE

Hello!

KLMNOPQR
STUVWXYZ



الكتاب والقصة معًا





HELLO!

English For Secondary Schools

&

GULLIVER'S TRAVELS

الصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الثانى

By

Emad Fawzy

Mohamed Abdel Aal

Ahmed Fadel

Ayman M. Ebrahim

Yacoub Moawad



بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

قال الله تعالى: ﴿ اقْرَأْ وَرَبُّكَ الْأَكْرَمُ ۝ الَّذِي عَلَّمَ بِالْقَلَمِ ۝ عَلَّمَ الْإِنسَانَ مَا لَمْ يَعْلَمْ ﴾ سورة العلق (٣ - ٥)

وقال تعالى: ﴿ يَرْفَعِ اللَّهُ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا مِنكُمْ وَالَّذِينَ أُوتُوا الْعِلْمَ دَرَجَاتٍ ﴾ سورة المجادلة (١١)

Contents

ذاكر بطريقة "سهلة" وممتعة

Scanning...

بتقنية QR code

شاهد فيديو

أو

بنك الأسئلة

كيفية الاستخدام

1. قم بتنزيل تطبيق QR code reader



2. استمتع بمشاهدة فيديو لشرح الدرس

أو قم بحل تدريب تفاعلى على الدرس

لمزيد من الفيديوهات والتدريبات زوروا موقعنا

www.aladwaa.com



Unit 9

Where today's food comes from

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for gist and specific information
Grammar	: Reported speech: statement
Reading	: Reading to check predictions and for detail
Critical thinking	: Looking at the uses of genetic engineering
Functions	: Giving advice and instructions
Writing	: Writing a magazine article

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

fertilizer (n)	سماد/ مُخصِّب
genetic (adj)	جينى/ وراثى
genetically (adv)	وراثيًا
genetics (n)	علم الوراثة
genetic engineering (n)	الهندسة الوراثية
hunter (n)	صياد (حيوانات برية)
method (n)	طريقة/ أسلوب
modified (adj)	مُعدَّل
modify (v) (y ied)	يعدل
modification (n)	تعديل
organic (adj)	عضوى
pesticide (n)	مبيد الآفات
poisonous (adj)	سام
quality (n)	جودة
ripen (v) (ed)	ينضج (للنبات)
ripe (adj)	ناضج
rot (v) (ted)	يتعفن
rotten (adj)	متعفن
spray (v) (ed)	يرش
starvation (n)	مجاعة/ الموت جوعًا
starve (v) (d)	يموت جوعًا

Vocabulary On Listening

add (v) (ed)	يضيف
addition (n)	إضافة
agriculture (n)	الزراعة
article (n)	مقال
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/ مادة كيميائية
continuously (adv)	باستمرار (بدون انقطاع)
crop (n)	محصول
disadvantages (n)	عيوب
discussion (n)	مناقشة/ جدال
farming (n)	الزراعة
fertile (adj)	خصب
flood (n) (v) (ed)	فيضان/ يفيض
improve (v) (d)	يحسن
improvement (n)	تحسين
ingredients (n)	مكونات (طعام)
main (adj)	أساسى
natural (adj)	طبيعى
non-organic (adj)	غير عضوى
produce (v) (d)	ينتج
production (n)	إنتاج
productive (adj)	منتج
products (n)	منتجات
quantity (n)	كمية
soil (n)	تربة
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/ يظن

Vocabulary On Reading

collect (v) (ed)	يجمع	laboratory (n)	معمل
collection (n)	مجموعة	normal (adj)	طبيعى/ عادى
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
damage (v) (d) (n)	يتلف/ تلف	nuts (n)	بندق/ مكسرات
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر	protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
destruction (n)	دمار	protection (n)	حماية/ وقاية
destructive (adj)	مُدَمِّر	protective (adj)	واقى/ وقائى
disease (n)	مرض	root (n)	جذر
genes (n)	جينات	save (v) (d)	يوفر/ يدخر
fear (v) (ed) (n)	يخشى/ خوف	seed (n)	بذرة
insect (n)	حشرة	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
insecticide (n)	مبيد حشرى	type (n)	نوع
		unnatural (adj)	غير طبيعى

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

advertisement (n)	إعلان	protein (n)	بروتين
amount (n)	مقدار/ كمية	frequently (adv)	تكرارًا/ فى كثير من الأحيان
attack (n) (v) (ed)	هجوم/ يهاجم	instructions (n)	تعليمات
change (v) (d) (n)	يغير/ تغيير	label (n)	ملصق بيانات
carbohydrates (n)	الكربوهيدرات	liquid (n)	سائل
decay (v) (ed)	يتعفن/ يفسد	particular (adj)	خاص/ محدد
fat (n)	دهن	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
remove (v) (d)	يزيل	plenty of (n)	وفرة من
taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/ يتذوق	remote (adj)	بعيد/ ناءٍ

Focus on Vocabulary

fertilizer	سماد/ مُخصِّب	something that you put on the soil to help plants to grow
genetic engineering	هندسة وراثية	the science of changing the genes of a living thing to improve it
genetically modified	معدَّل وراثيًا	describes crops that have been scientifically changed to improve them
hunter	صياد (حيوانات برية)	a person who hunts wild animals
ingredient	مكوِّن	something we use to make a kind of food
method	طريقة	a way of doing something
organic	عضوى	produced without chemicals that are harmful to the environment
pesticide	مبيد آفات	a chemical that is used to kill insects that damage crops
poisonous	سام	describes something that will kill or hurt someone if they eat or drink it
quality	جودة	how good or bad something is
ripen	ينضج	become ready to eat
rot	يتعفن	decay
spray	يرش	to make liquid come out of a container in very small drops
starvation	مجاعة	when someone becomes ill because they do not have enough to eat

Expressions & Idioms

as far as I'm concerned	بقدر اهتمامى	improve the quality of	يحسن جودة .....
bring new diseases	يجلب أمراضًا جديدة	in favour of	مؤيد لـ
do harm	يؤذى/ يضر	make money	يجنى مالًا
do exercise	يتمرن	over time	بمرور الوقت
get worse	يسوء	put genes into plants	يضع جينات فى النباتات

Phrases & Prepositions

bad for	سيئ/ مُضر لـ	responsible for	مسئول عن
depend on	يعتمد على	save ... from	يدخر ... من
good for	جيد لـ	spray ... with	يرش ... بـ
poisonous to	سام لـ	suffer from	يعانى من
protect ... from	يحمى ... من	worried about	قلق على

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
genetic	جينى/ وراثى	hereditary	acquired	مكتسب
method	طريقة/ منهج	approach/process	disorganization	عدم تنظيم
modify	يعدل	adjust	disarrange/unfit/disorder	يعبث
organic	عضوى	biological	inorganic	غير عضوى
poisonous	سام	toxic	healthy/intoxic	صحى/ غير سام
ripen	ينضج	develop/mature	decline/decay	يتدهور/ يتحلل
rot	يتعفن	decay/spoil	flourish	يزدهر/ يثمر
spray	يرش	shower/ sprinkle	collect/dry	يجمع/ يجفف
fertile	خصب	fruitful	barren	قاحل
liquid	سائل	fluid	solid	صلب

Notes on Vocabulary

contain | include | consist of

contain
يحتوى على (بداخله)
- There were four or five boxes containing toys and books.

include
يشمل/ يتضمن (ما بعده يشكل جزءًا مما قبله)
- The price of the computer includes 500 pounds worth of free software.

consist of
يتكون من (ما بعده يشكل كل ما قبله)
- A football team consists of ten players and a goalkeeper.

make | cause | let | allow

- We make our children read simple stories. يجعل (المصدر بدون to)
- He caused the little girls to cry. يسبب (المصدر + to)
- We let our children read simple stories. يترك/ يسمح (المصدر بدون to)
- Using good seeds allows farmers to get better crops. يسمح (المصدر + to)

earth | floor | ground | land | soil

earth
الكرة الأرضية/ تراب
- The earth is not flat as most people believed in the past.

floor
طابق فى بناية/ أرضية الحجرة
- The floor of the flat needs cleaning.

ground
أرض فضاء
- On my way home, my bag dropped on the ground.

land
اليابسة
- The earth consists of water and land.

soil
تربة (زراعية/ رملية)
- This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil not sandy soil.

over time | overtime

over time
بمرور الوقت/ بانتظام
- Language researchers always say that languages change over time.

overtime
١- وقت إضافى (فى العمل)
٢- مقابل (أجر) يدفع مقابل العمل الإضافى
- The workers are working overtime to finish the project on time.
- Employees who do extra work should be paid overtime.

whose — who's (who is/who has)

whose
ضمير وصل (للملكية)
- In the past people were hunters whose food came from animals and fish.

whose
لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)
- Whose bag is that? Is it yours?

who's (who is/who has)
ضمير وصل (للفاعل العاقل)
- Leila is the student who is (who's) working on the project with me.
- Write the name of the pupil who has (who's) finished writing.

Prefix (in-non) — suffix (-icide)

Prefix

البادئة هى كلمة أو جزء من كلمة تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى محددًا ومنها (in–non) اللذان يعطيان معنى (غير/ بلا).

inorganic	غير عضوى	incomplete	غير كامل	inaccurate	غير دقيق
Non-organic	غير عضوى	nonstop	بلا توقف	Non-smoker	غير مدخن

suffix

اللاحقة هى كلمة أو جزء من كلمة تضاف آخر الكلمة لتعطى معنى محددًا ومنها (-icide) التى تعطى معنى (قتل/ مبيد).

insecticide	مبيد حشرى	pesticide	مبيد آفات
herbicide	مبيد أعشاب	suicide	انتحار(قتل النفس)

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doctors say that we should avoid foods which .... a lot of fat.
   a) consist b) include c) enclose d) contain
2. My parents always .... me do my homework before I go to bed.
   a) make b) cause c) allow d) permit
3. I watched the children who sat playing on the .... of their room.
   a) ground b) land c) floor d) soil
4. It is cheaper to drill for oil on .... than at sea.
   a) ground b) land c) floor d) soil
5. My uncle earns 4000 pounds a month, including ....
   a) overtime b) over time c) time over d) time limit

6 My new flat .... of three bedrooms, a large living room, a kitchen, a bathroom and a reception.

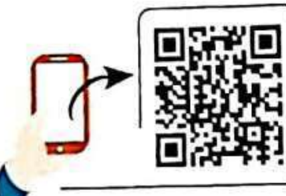
a) consists b) includes c) encloses d) contains

7 That's the man .... house has burned down in the fire.

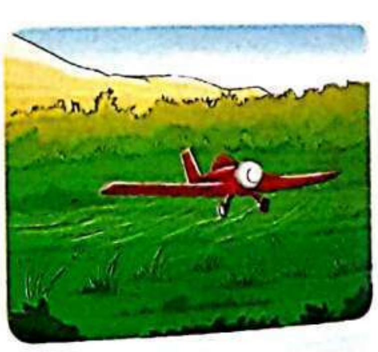
a) who's b) whose c) who has d) who was

8 The company management staff evaluate the projects ....

a) overtime b) over time c) time over d) time limit



Listening Text





Hassan : What was the radio programme about that you were listening to, Ali?

Ali : It was very interesting, Hassan. It was an interview with a farmer. He was talking about organic[1] farming.

Hassan : What did he say?

Ali : He said that organic farming was the best way to farm.

Hassan : Really? I don't think it is. Why did he think that?

Ali : Well, he said that when he was learning about farming, his teacher told him that most fruit and vegetables were sprayed[2] with pesticides[3]. He explained that pesticides could be poisonous[4].

Hassan : I suppose so.

Ali : He also said that in the past, the Nile had flooded[5] every year. He explained that this had left fertile[6] soil on the fields, so farmers hadn't needed chemical fertilizers[7] then. He said that the Nile doesn't flood the fields now, but there must be a better way to improve the soil than spraying the fields with chemicals.

Hassan : What is the answer, then?

Ali : He said that he wanted to improve the quality[8] of the soil by adding natural, organic fertilizers.

Hassan : But surely it's much quicker and easier for farmers to spray their crops with chemical fertilizers and pesticides, isn't it?

(1) عضوي
(2) يرش
(3) مبيدات
(4) سام
(5) يفيض
(6) خصب
(7) سماد
(8) جودة

Ali : Yes, but he said that using organic fertilizers would be cheaper than using chemical fertilizers.

Hassan : What about the quantity of crops farmers get, though? Modern farming makes more money than organic farming, doesn't it? What did he say about that?

Ali : He said that organic farms didn't produce[9] the same quantities as modern farms, so they didn't make quite as much money. But he said that organic food is much better for you.

Hassan : I'm not so sure. Did he talk about genetically modified[10] crops, too?

Ali : He asked the interviewer if he could talk about genetically modified crops, but the interviewer said that this was going to be the subject of the programme the following week.

Hassan : It'll be on next Tuesday, won't it?

Ali : Yes, it will. It's an interesting subject, isn't it?

Hassan : Yes, I'd like to listen to that.

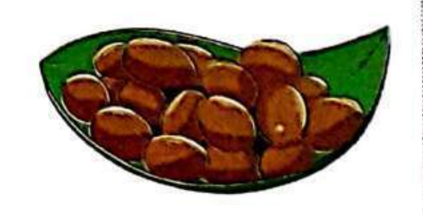
(9) ينتج
(10) معدّل وراثيًا



Reading Text

Should our food be modified?

Thousands of years ago, most people were hunters[1] whose food came from the animals and fish that they had killed and from nuts, roots and fruit that they had collected. Later, these hunters lived in one place and became farmers whose method[2] of getting food was to grow crops from the seeds of wild plants. Over time, they noticed that some plants were better than others. They saved the seeds from these plants and so the quality[3] of their crops improved.



Like plants, all other living things contain genes which control what they will be like. Modern scientists can put genes into plants and animals in their laboratories, and this means that they can modify their genes in order to change what they are like. This is called genetic engineering[4].

(1) صيادون
(2) طريقة
(3) جودة/ نوعية
(4) الهندسة الوراثية

14 People in the past ate food made of only natural ....

a) fractions b) factors c) mixtures d) ingredients

15 If water gets inside the woodwork, it may cause it to ....

a) rot b) ripen c) grow d) collect

16 Millions of people die of .... each year because of food shortage in war areas.

a) diabetes b) thirst c) allergy d) starvation

17 Scientists are able to .... genes of plants to improve their qualities.

a) identify b) modify c) justify d) solidify

18 The government provides poor farmers with enough money to buy .... for their crops.

a) reeds b) leaves c) seeds d) deeds

19 Those bananas aren't .... yet - they're still green.

a) ripe b) ripen c) ripening d) rip

20 Hydrogen sulphide كبريتيد الهيدروجين is a gas that has a smell like .... eggs.

a) rot b) rotten c) rottener d) rioted

21 We need to make some .... to our teaching program.

a) modify b) modified c) modifying d) modification

22 After two days of continuous rain, the village was .... and many houses were destroyed.

a) flowed b) flooded c) fled d) floated

23 The young elephants must eat several times daily, or they will .... to death.

a) feed b) grow c) stoop d) starve

24 The rocky .... is suitable for planting grapes and similar crops.

a) floor b) soil c) surface d) lake

25 My friend's hobby is .... rare stamps of different countries.

a) cutting b) correcting c) collecting d) detecting

26 Our team hope to .... their performance before the new championship.

a) prove b) remove c) disapprove d) improve

27 The Nile used to flood leaving lands .... It was good for farming.

a) fertile b) poor c) qualified d) infertile

28 The .... of plants grow under the ground.

a) fruits b) leaves c) roots d) branches

29 We all should protect plants because they take in carbon dioxide and .... oxygen.

a) produce b) introduce c) deduce d) reduce

30 The environmental conditions in this area will get better .... time.

a) all b) on c) at d) over

31 He managed to .... enough money to buy a small house.
a) lose b) save c) waste d) pass

32 People .... that they can't get rid of the causes of air pollution.
a) consist b) frighten c) bear d) fear

33 It's the army's duty to .... the country from any dangers.
a) predict b) protect c) prohibit d) inhibit

34 .... is a substance in some foods that provides your body with heat and energy.
a) Fat b) Protein c) Carbohydrate d) Salt

35 .... should contain information about the percentage of GM ingredients in the food we buy.
a) Labels b) Tickets c) Cables d) Tables

36 One .... of organic farming is that it doesn't make much money.
a) advert b) advantage c) disadvantage d) merit

37 Playing with the matches caused fire and .... a lot of damage.
a) made b) did c) got d) had

38 This programme is a useful .... to the company's famous set of software.
a) announcement b) addition c) discovery d) intention

39 This kind of chemical fertilizer is available as a powder or a ....
a) water b) syrup c) medicine d) liquid

40 My father is worried .... my brother who is careless and lazy.
a) at b) about c) with d) for

41 The price of the room at this hotel doesn't .... breakfast.
a) contain b) enclose c) include d) miss

42 There are fears that experimenting on human may .... new diseases which could be very dangerous.
a) bring b) prevent c) protect d) stop

43 My sister enjoys reading novels about .... places of the world that weren't visited by many people.
a) near b) remote c) familiar d) secret

44 The plane was completely .... when it hit a mountain.
a) attacked b) attached c) destroyed d) applauded

45 Cholera is a .... which is spread by polluted food and water.
a) diet b) disease c) campaign d) problem

46 If the child .... worse, I'll take him to hospital immediately.
a) raises b) goes c) gives d) gets

47 Father gave me strict .... to get home by ten o'clock.
a) information b) directions c) instructions d) data

48 Many passengers complained that the trains were .... cancelled.
a) frequently b) rarely c) gradually d) scarcely

49 The old man was able to lead a/an .... life, despite the illness.
a) natural b) average c) normal d) abnormal

50 Police dogs are trained to .... criminals and catch them.
a) attach b) investigate c) apply d) attack

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The word "flourish" is an antonym to the word ....
a) develop b) rot c) ripen d) design

2 I hope the criminals who killed the young man ....in jail.
a) ripen b) stay c) live d) rot

3 The tourist could feel the .... from the waterfall on her skin as she was in the boat.
a) spray b) spread c) spring d) well

4 Mercedes Benz is well known for making .... fuel-efficient cars.
a) quantity b) sufficient c) quality d) amount

5 The patient had to .... for 12 hours before the open-heart operation.
a) starve b) feed c) eat d) exercise

6 During a recent visit to Egypt, the famous footballer was chased by autograph ....
a) developers b) printers c) catchers d) hunters

7 The boy .... the old photo of his primary class so that only the faces remained.
a) carved b) planted c) cropped d) harvested

8 Works of art are considered the product of a/an .... imagination of a great writer.
a) organic b) fertile c) barren d) illiterate

9 The famous tennis player was .... second at Wimbledon Championship this year.
a) written b) grown c) seeded d) honoured

10 Honest police officers wouldn't want to .... their hands with evil money.
a) soil b) wash c) fill d) enrich

Grammar

Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

- نستخدم صيغة الكلام غير المباشر عندما نخبر بأن شخصًا ما قال أو اعتقد شيئًا، وهنا يستلزم تغيير الكلمات الخاصة بالزمن والمكان والضمائر؛ لأن الجمل تحول فى مكان غير المكان وزمن غير الزمن.

Reported Statement الجملة الخبرية

١ - يحول فعل القول كالآتى:

Direct	Indirect
say	say
says	says
said	said
say to	tell + مفعول
says to	tells + مفعول
said to	told + مفعول

٢ - تحذف علامات التنصيص وتربط الجملة بـ that ويمكن عدم استخدامها.

٣- تحول الضمائر حسب المعنى أو كالآتى:

(أ) الضميران I/we يحولان حسب المتكلم.

(ب) الضمير you يحول حسب المخاطب.

(جـ) الضمائر he/she/it/they والأسماء لا تحول.

مع ملاحظة تغيير صفات الملكية وضمائر الملكية والضمائر المنعكسة على حسب السياق.

my ⟶ his/her
our ⟶ their
ours ⟶ theirs

mine ⟶ his/hers
myself ⟶ himself/herself
ourselves ⟶ themselves

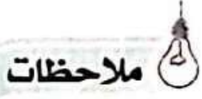
٤- يحول زمن الجملة من المضارع إلى الماضي وليس العكس (إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا) كالآتي:

Direct	Indirect
"I work hard," he said	He said (that) he worked hard.
"I am working hard," he said	He said (that) he was working hard.
"I have worked hard," he said	He said (that) he had worked hard.
"I worked hard," he said	He said (that) he worked/had worked hard.
"I will work hard," he said	He said (that) he would work hard.
"I have been working hard," he said	He said (that) he had been working hard.
"I am going to work harder," he said	He said (that) he was going to work harder.
"I can work harder," he said	He said (that) he could work harder.
"I may work harder," he said	He said (that) he might work harder.
"I must work harder," he said	He said (that) he had to/must work harder.
"I should work harder," he said	He said (that) he should work harder.
"I ought to work harder," he said	He said (that) he ought to work harder.
"I needn't find another job," he said	He said (that) he didn't need to/didn't have to find another job.

٥- تحول الظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان وضمائر الإشارة كالآتي:

Direct	Indirect
now	then
this	that
these	those
here	there
(two days) ago	(two days) before/earlier
last week	the week before/the previous week
tomorrow morning	the next/following morning
next (Friday)	the following (Friday)
tonight	that night

Direct	Indirect
tomorrow	the next day
next week	the following week
today	that day
yesterday	the day before the previous day
this afternoon	that afternoon



١ - لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل القول فى المضارع say (s)/ tell (s).

- She says, "I live in a small flat in Cairo."
- She says she lives in a small flat in Cairo.

٢ - لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة.

- The teacher said, "Paris is the capital of France."
- The teacher said (that) Paris is the capital of France.

أما إذا كان الشيء غير حقيقى أو يعبر عن رأى فلا بد من تغيير الزمن.

- He said, "China is a poor country."
- He said that China was a poor country.

٣- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة:

- He said just now, "I'm seeing the manager tomorrow."
- He said just now (that) he is seeing the manager tomorrow.

٤ - يمكن تغيير الماضى البسيط إلى تام أو يبقى بسيطًا كما هو إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا (ما لم تحول الكلمات الدالة).

- "I was early for the meeting," she said.
- She said she was/ had been early for the meeting.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They .... they were going to build a new metro station there.
a) said b) wondered c) told d) inquired

2 You said you .... chocolate, but you aren't eating any.
a) likes b) will like c) liked d) have liked



3 Amany said that she .... many mistakes before being a clever dressmaker.
a) makes b) had made c) has made d) will make

4 Mohamed told me the windows .... locked.
a) weren't b) aren't c) hadn't d) haven't

5 He said he .... to the radio then.
a) didn't listen b) listens c) isn't listening d) wasn't listening

6 He .... his brother that he was going out with his friends.
a) asked b) spoke c) told d) said

7 Sarah said she .... to finish the report.
a) needs b) had c) is d) has

8 The couple said that they .... the flat but not the neighbours.
a) liked b) like c) have liked d) are liking

9 Omar said he .... going to Rome the following month.
a) has been b) had been c) is d) was

10 They said they .... stayed in the hotel because it was too expensive.
a) weren't b) haven't c) hadn't d) hadn't been

Extra Points

❶ لا يتغير الزمن بعد الروابط الزمنية حفاظا على وحدة الجملة ومعناها.

- "While I was staying in Cairo, I met the minister twice," she said.
- She said she met the minister twice while she was staying in Cairo.

غالبًا لا نحول الماضى التام ولا الماضى المستمر فى غير المباشر.

- "I was watching TV while Amal was reading a book."
- He said he was watching TV while Amal was reading a book.

❷ نحول الحالة الأولى من If إلى الحالة الثانية فى بعض الحالات، ولكن الماضى فى الحالة الثانية والثالثة لا يحول، وكذلك التمنى لا يحول.

(1st conditional)
- "If you ask Ali, he'll help you." Omar said.
- Omar said (that) if I asked Ali, he would help me.

(2nd conditional)
- "If my children were older, I'd immigrate." Samy said to me.
- Samy told me (that) if his children were older, he would immigrate.

❸ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلًا من said/said to عند نقل الجملة إلى غير المباشر ويأتى بعدها v + ing:

suggested / admitted / denied / apologised for / objected to / insisted on + (v-ing)

- He said, "Let's watch the news on TV."
- He suggested watching the news on TV.

بعد deny/admit يمكن تحويل الجملة بالطريقة العادية وهى استخدام that وجملة بعدها:

- He said, "I didn't see the accident."
- He denied seeing the accident.
- He denied that he had seen the accident.

❹ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلًا من said/said to عند تحويل الجملة إلى غير المباشر ويأتى بعدها to + inf.

promised/offered/agreed/threatened/advised/refused/reminded/decided + (to + inf.)

- He said, "I'll lend you the money you need."
- He promised to lend me the money I needed.

❺ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلًا من فعل القول said/said to:

claimed ادعى / complained شكا /mentioned ذكر / indicated أوضح / asserted أكد / agreed وافق/reported أبلغ /explained شرح

- He said, "The service in this restaurant is not good."
- He complained that the service in that restaurant was not good.

❻ الأفعال الناقصة الآتية لا تتغير فى غير المباشر:

would/should/ought/had better/might/used to/could

- He said, "I used to clean my room every day."
- He said he used to clean his room every day.



لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher .... us that a lot of English words are borrowed from other languages.
   a) said b) wondered c) told d) inquired
2. Leila said that she .... TV then.
   a) had watched b) watched c) was watching d) is watching
3. Our teacher said that water .... below 0°C.
   a) freezes b) froze c) frozen d) freezing
4. He told me that he would help me to repair my car the ....
   a) day before b) following day c) day following d) previous day
5. The expert .... that pesticides could be poisonous.
   a) asked b) told c) promised d) explained

6 He said that he .... the moral of the film.
a) doesn't understand b) understands c) hadn't understood d) understand

7 She told him that he .... to a doctor if he had any health problems.
a) could go b) can go c) will go d) must go

8 He told her that he saw the film she .... the night before.
a) recommends b) recommended
c) had recommended d) recommending

9 He said that he .... to Spain the following week.
a) went b) was going c) will go d) has gone

10 Zeinab .... Mona that London is the biggest city in England.
a) said b) promised c) explained d) told

11 He said that he .... for several jobs that week.
a) has applied b) may apply c) had applied d) can apply

12 He said that he .... her playing the piano.
a) had seen b) has seen c) will see d) was seeing

13 I told the professor I .... the following lecture.
a) hadn't attended b) won't attend c) wouldn't attend d) didn't attend

14 He said just now that he .... a new car next month.
a) will buy b) has bought c) buys d) would buy

15 Ramy said he .... to Cairo a year before.
a) moved b) would move c) has moved d) had moved

16 Marwa .... that if she tidied her room, her dad would be happy.
a) said b) told c) asked d) wondered

17 He promised that he .... it the next day.
a) will do b) did c) would do d) had done

18 She said that her father .... a year before.
a) died b) had died c) has died d) would die

19 Ramy says he .... to get a taxi now.
a) is trying b) was trying c) had tried d) has tried

20 He said that he .... because he had an appointment in half an hour.
a) has to leave b) is to leave c) has left d) had to leave

21 He said that he .... me if he could.
a) would help b) will help c) can help d) helped

22 She told us that she would come with us as soon as we .... ready.
a) will be b) were c) are d) have been

23 They said that they .... a lift but very often it didn't work.

a) have b) have had c) are having d) had

24 My brother said he .... an old Roman coin in the garden the day before.

a) has found b) had found c) found d) would find

25 He claimed that while he ...., someone screamed in the garden.

a) had slept b) is sleeping c) was sleeping d) has been sleeping

26 He said that the Nile .... the fields now.

a) didn't flood b) hadn't flooded c) doesn't flood d) wasn't flooding

27 Mona said that there .... a lot of small farms near her grandparents' house.

a) is b) were c) may be d) will be

28 Zeinab said that she .... to visit a farm one day.

a) wanted b) wants c) has wanted d) is wanting

29 Mona told Zeinab that she would take her when she .... her grandparents the following week.

a) will visit b) would visit c) has visited d) visited

30 Nada said that she .... have a sandwich for lunch.

a) will b) was going to c) is going to d) can

31 The newspaper said that addiction .... the subject of the programme the following week.

a) is b) will be c) is going to be d) was going to be

32 He said that Cairo .... very big.

a) is b) had been c) has been d) shall be

33 Ola told the class that she .... a talk about meat on Monday.

a) may give b) can give c) will give d) would give

34 Ola explained that it was important to buy meat from farmers that .... after their animals well.

a) will look b) look c) looked d) are looking

35 Fatma said a moment ago that she .... for a big company.

a) work b) works c) had worked d) had been working

36 My uncle explained that many people in India .... English.

a) speak b) will speak c) speaking d) was speaking

37 The farmers said that they .... organic fertilizers in the following year.

a) will use b) use c) would use d) had used

38 He said that he .... more people if he had a bigger flat.

a) had invited b) invited c) can invite d) would invite

39 Ali said that he .... tired the day before.
a) was b) had been c) had d) has been

40 My brother said that he .... on holiday the following week.
a) will go b) will be going c) was going d) had gone

41 Ramy .... his father had bought a new car the year before.
a) said b) says c) told d) explained

42 He told his son that he .... obey his parents and teachers.
a) would b) will have to c) must d) had to

43 Omar said that he .... to get high marks the following year.
a) would expect b) expects c) will expect d) expected

44 He said that water .... if I had put it in the freezer the night before.
a) would have frozen b) freezes c) is frozen d) will freeze

45 He .... when he had finished his poem, everyone clapped.
a) told b) wondered c) asked d) said

46 He .... what annoyed him was that his son came late every night.
a) inquired b) told c) said d) asked

47 He said that he always wanted to be a doctor and .... sick people.
a) helps b) helping c) helped d) help

48 She said that she would phone me when she .... back.
a) got b) gets c) has got d) was getting

49 She said just now that she .... long hair when she was young.
a) is used to having b) used to have c) has d) uses to have

50 Sameh told us that many elephants .... each year by illegal hunters.
a) killed b) have been killed c) kill d) are killed

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 .... is that book I was reading? Have you seen it?
a) Which b) Who c) Where d) What

2 Everyone has done their homework, ... they?
a) have b) hasn't c) hadn't d) haven't

3 Badr found .... information on the Internet that he could use in his essay.
a) several b) a little c) a few d) many

4 The couple chatted with .... while they waited for the bus.
a) each other b) the other c) every other d) other

5 The bee stung him on .... nose.
a) an b) a c) the d) no article

6 Help .... to a piece of cake. You aren't a guest.
a) yourself b) yours c) you d) yourselves

7 .... about the bad hotel, he would have cancelled the trip.
a) Did he know b) Shall he know c) Had he known d) If he knew

8 Despite what you think, I .... care about the environment.
a) done b) to do c) am doing d) do

9 The reason .... I can't come is that I have to work late.
a) because b) for c) as d) why

10 Book your hotel room early, ... you won't find a vacancy.
a) otherwise b) providing c) supposing d) unless

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

1 Giving and responding to advice

إعطاء النصيحة والرد عليها

Giving Advice	*Responding to Advice*
• You should	الموافقة
• Make sure you	• I agree with you.
• Remember to	• You are right.
• You mustn't	• I will do that.
• You need ...., but don't	عدم الموافقة
• Don't + inf .... It's bad for you.	• That's not true.
• If I were you, I'd	• I'll see.
	• I'm not sure about that.

2 Giving instructions

إعطاء التعليمات

1. Everyone must/should ....
2. You must/mustn't ....
3. You should/shouldn't ....
4. Don't ....
5. We must all ....
6. Never ....
7. Remember to ....
8. Don't forget to ....

Writing: A Magazine Article

- **To write a magazine article, we would like to know:**
  1. Your favourite type of food and how often you eat it.
  2. What this food contains (proteins, fats or carbohydrates) and why it is good or not so good for you.
- **End with some advice for our readers.**

Model Essay

Food is something everyone has to eat in order to survive, but we all want or like to eat something which gives us a lot of pleasure. Most of us have a certain type of favourite dish and a certain way to prepare it and enjoy. I prefer vegetables to meat. I think the dishes of vegetables are very healthy, each one of them has its own quality. But in fact my favourite dish is chicken with rice and courgettes.

I prefer this dish because of the great taste. It also contains the most important food elements. Chicken contains protein and fat. Rice contains carbohydrates. Courgettes, a kind of vegetables, contain vitamins. I usually have a kind of salad with this dish. Green salad which contains tomatoes, lettuce, cucumber and carrots is my favourite.

As far as I'm concerned, everyone should eat different kinds of food. For example, you should eat meat, fish or chicken, as they have lots of protein, but not every day. You mustn't eat too much cheese or butter, as they have a lot of fat. Remember to eat bread or rice as they have carbohydrates. You must eat vegetables and fruits which have vitamins necessary for your health.

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. Are you for or against genetically modified crops?
2. How can we be ready for the problem of water shortage?

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Some people believe that genetic engineering can add to people's happiness and comfort. Others think that it can lead to serious consequences now or in the future.
2. Being successful is not an easy task. However, having a set of clear aims and giving priority to the urgent ones are vital to achieve success.

3. Being flexible means being prepared to learn new skills and to adapt to different situations.
4. We must find a solution to the problem of over-population. It can hinder development and cause many other serious problems.
5. Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration of the workplace. So, we should all get used to everyday exercise.
6. Lifelong learning provides us with active minds and confidence to face life obstacles. It also helps any country's economic development.

B) Translate into English:

١- لا يحب الكثير من الشباب مشاهدة الأفلام الوثائقية التى تثرى معارفهم ووعيهم بالعالم من حولهم.
٢- يجب أن تكون المنتجات المصرية عالية الجودة لكى تتمكن من منافسة المنتجات الأخرى فى الأسواق العالمية.
٣- كثرة المال لا توفر بالضرورة حلولًا لكل المشكلات وليست الوسيلة الوحيدة للحصول على السعادة.
٤- تعتمد طرق التعليم الحديثة على المتعة وأدوات التكنولوجيا الحديثة مثل الكمبيوتر والإنترنت.
٥- للطفولة أثر كبير فى تكوين شخصية الفرد من الناحية النفسية والاجتماعية لذا يجب أن نوليها الاهتمام الواجب.
٦- يجب أن تهتم المدارس بمواهب الطلاب و محاولة تنميتها من خلال الأنشطة المختلفة التى تعزز عملية التعلم.

Enrich your Vocabulary

awareness	وعى	hinder	يعوق
confidence	الثقة بالنفس	obstacles	عقبات
consequences	عواقب	over-population	الزيادة السكانية
documentaries	الأفلام الوثائقية	priority	أولوية
enforce	تعزز	sufficient	كافٍ
enrich	تثرى	talents	مواهب
flexible	مرن	task	مهمة
frustration	إحباط	urgent	عاجل/ ملح



Test 1 Based on Unit 9

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He agreed he would not tell anyone what I ....
   a) say b) will say c) have said d) had said
2. Many scientists are worried that .... modified crops will bring diseases in the future.
   a) academically b) alphabetically c) genetically d) automatically
3. In some countries, chemical fertilizers are now .... over fields by small planes.
   a) displayed b) sprayed c) decayed d) prayed
4. They promised that they .... us as soon as they arrived.
   a) is going to phone b) would phone
   c) will phone d) will be phoning
5. Ice and fruit juice were the two main .... of the first ice cream.
   a) protections b) factors c) components d) ingredients
6. She told me that she was late as she .... for her handbag.
   a) had been looking b) has been looking c) will be looking d) can look
7. My elder brother was .... with joy when his first child was born.
   a) drowned b) buried c) flooded d) floated
8. Fatma has just told Amira that they .... to their friend's wedding tonight.
   a) would go b) have gone c) were going d) are going
9. The biologists said these fish .... upstream in the autumn.
   a) swim b) swam c) swum d) are swimming
10. The verb "adjust" is similar in meaning to the verb ....
    a) rot b) modify c) damage d) save
11. Not many families in Egypt can afford to go .... because this costs a lot of money.
    a) genetic b) dramatic c) organic d) economic
12. I'd better .... my credit card in case I run out of cash.
    a) to bring b) bringing c) bring d) brought
13. He said that he .... a crossword at that time.
    a) would do b) is doing c) was doing d) had done
14. They said that they .... on a picnic the following weekend.
    a) had gone b) might go c) went d) have gone

15 The mechanic said that he could repair my car the ....

a) day before b) previous day c) day following d) following day

16 The art teacher said that if you .... red with yellow you get orange.

a) mix b) mixed c) had mixed d) are mixing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You are a citizen of the country you were born in. Usually, Citizens live in their country as loyal members of society. Many countries also have options so people who are not natural-born citizens can become citizens of that country. When they complete the requirements, they are called naturalized citizens. As a citizen of your country, you have some rights, duties and responsibilities. The law of any country should guarantee the rights of all citizens and the rights should be the same for all citizens. The rights of citizens are protected in the Constitution. A citizen has the right to speak freely and the right to religious freedom. A citizen who is accused of a crime has a right to a fair trial.

In exchange for their rights, citizens have duties and responsibilities. They have a duty to serve in the army when asked. They should obey all laws. In wartime, they must serve in the armed forces when required to. They must pay taxes to support the services and programs of the government. Good citizens vote in elections to express their opinion on how the government should be run.

In addition to a national citizenship, people are citizens of a state and a city. They have similar rights and responsibilities in each level of citizenship.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What protects the rights of the citizen in any country?

a) The citizenship. b) The responsibilities.

c) The Constitution. d) The trial.

18 The best title to the passage is ....

a) Asking for the rights.

b) Paying taxes.

c) The responsibilities of the citizenship

d) The citizen's rights and responsibilities

19 "Doing as you are told" means ....

a) obeying b) agreement c) voting d) exchanging

20 People who vote in elections to express their opinion are ....

a) volunteers b) respectable and noble

c) greedy d) selfish

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What is a naturalized citizen?

22 Describe some of the duties and responsibilities of a citizen.

23 Mention two rights that should be guaranteed to citizens.

24 Why should all people share in the responsibilities of their country?

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Everyone should realise the importance of agriculture to our life and future. It's the only means to put an end to the problem of food shortage and famines.

26 **Translate into English:**

يتطلب إصلاح أى نظام اجتماعى تعاون الأفراد والحكومة لوضع القواعد الصحيحة التى تساعد على ذلك ولا تضر بالنظام العام المقبول بالمجتمع.

27 **Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:**

How can we be ready for the problem of water shortage?





Herman Melville: *Moby Dick*

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for detail and to interpret information
Grammar	: Past perfect simple and continuous
Reading	: Reading for detail and between the lines
Critical thinking	: Understanding the dangers of being too ambitious
Functions	: Making recommendations and giving reasons
Writing	: Writing a book review

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

armed (adj)	مسلح
ashore (adv)	على/ إلى الشاطئ
attached (adj)	متصل
attack (v) (ed) (n)	يهجم/ هجوم
continent (n)	قارة
crew (n)	طاقم (طائرة/ سفينة)
determined (adj)	مصمم/ عازم
determination (n)	تصميم/ عقد العزم
drown (v) (ed)	يغرق (للأشخاص)
enemy (n)	عدو
harpoon (n)	رمح لصيد الحيتان
ocean (n)	محيط
primitive (adj)	بدائى
purpose (n)	غرض
remote (adj)	بعيد/ ناءٍ
remoteness (n)	بعد
whaling (n)	صيد الحيتان

Vocabulary On Listening

adventure (n)	مغامرة
adventurous (adj)	مغامر
bored (adj)	متضجر/ شاعر بالملل
boredom (n)	الملل
come out (v)	يَصدُر (كتاب)
disappointed (adj)	محبط
except (prep)	ما عدا
goods (n)	بضائع
hero (n)	بطل
hunt (v) ed	يصطاد/ يطارد
import (v) (ed)	يستورد
navy (n)	بحرية/ أسطول
ordinary (adj)	عادى
poem (n)	قصيدة
popular (adj)	محبوب
return (v) (ed)	يرجع/ يعود
serious (adj)	جاد/ خطير
seriousness (n)	جدية/ خطورة
successful (adj)	ناجح
success (n)	نجاح
succeed (v) (ed)	ينجح
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Vocabulary On Reading

aboard (adv)	على متن (السفينة أو الطائرة)
accident (n)	حادث
captain (n)	قائد/ قبطان
coin (n)	عملة معدنية
hold onto (v) (held)	يتمسك بـ
offer (v) (ed)	يعرض
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ
prediction (n)	تنبؤ
ram (v) (med)	يصطدم بشدة بـ
rescue (v) (d)	ينقذ
route (n) (v) (d)	طريق/ ينقل/ يوجه
sailor (n)	بحار
sink (v) (sank - sunk)	يغرق/ يُغرق (للأشياء)
storyteller (n)	راوى القصة
voyage (n)	رحلة بحرية

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ ينجز
activity (n)	نشاط
ambitious (adj)	طموح
ambition (n)	طموح
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب
believe (v) (d)	يعتقد
cave (n)	كهف
character (n)	شخصية
comment (n)	تعليق
conference (n)	مؤتمر
crash (v) (ed)	يصطدم
details (n)	تفاصيل
draft (n)	مسودة
enemy (n)	عدو
exactly (adv)	بالضبط
excitement (n)	إثارة
goal (n)	هدف
human (adj)	بشرى/ إنسانى
incredible (adj)	غير معقول/ رائع
message (n)	رسالة
old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
possible (adj)	ممكن
recommend (v) (ed)	يرشح/ يوصى بـ
recommendation (n)	ترشيح/ توصية
report (n)	تقرير
reviewer (n)	ناقد
review (n)	مراجعة/ نقد
simple (adj)	بسيط
special (adj)	خاص
storm (n)	عاصفة
title (n)	عنوان (كتاب)
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ

Focus on Vocabulary

Word	Arabic	Definition
armed	مسلح	describes someone or something that carries weapons
ashore	إلى الشاطئ	onto or towards the side of a lake, river, sea or ocean
attached	متصل/ ملحق	joined or fixed to something
attack	يهاجم	try to hurt or damage by using physical violence
continent	قارة	a large area of land that contains several countries
crew	طاقم	the people who work on a ship
determined	مصمم	describes someone who wants to do something very much
drown	يغرق	die by sinking into water and not being able to breathe
enemy	عدو	someone who doesn't like you
harpoon	رمح الصيد	a weapon like a spear
navy	بحرية/ الأسطول	the people and ships that a country has to protect it
ocean	محيط	one of the large areas of salt water that cover most of the Earth
primitive	بدائى	belonging to an early stage of the development of humans or animals
purpose	غرض	a reason for doing something
remote	بعيد/ ناءٍ	far away in distance or time
whaling	صيد الحيتان	the activity of hunting whales

Expressions & Idioms

at the beginning	فى البداية	in his mid-twenties	فى منتصف العشرينيات
at the time of	فى وقت	reach a goal	يحقق هدفًا
born into a .. family	يولد فى أسرة ...	win his fight with	يكسب معركته مع
fall to his death	يلقى حتفه	work on a novel	يعمل فى تأليف رواية

Phrases & Prepositions

armed with	مسلح بـ	crash into	يصطدم بـ
attached to	متصل بـ	look for	يبحث عن
bored with	شاعر بالملل من	think of	يفكر فى
come out	يظهر/ يصدر	wait for	ينتظر

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
ashore	للشاطئ	on land	aboard/at sea	على متن السفينة
determined	مصمم/ عاقد العزم	decisive/persistent	undetermined	غير مصمم
drown	يغرق	immerse/sink	float	يطفو
enemy	عدو	foe/rival	supporter/friend	مؤيد/ صديق
primitive	بدائى	undeveloped	modern/cultured	حديث/ مثقف
purpose	غرض	target/desire	dislike/accident	كره/ نفور/ مصادفة
remote	بعيد/ ناءٍ	distant	close/nearby	قريب/ مجاور
bored	متضجر/ شاعر بالملل	tired/disinterested	interested/excited	مهتم/ متحمس
ordinary	عادى	normal	extraordinary	متميز
popular	مشهور/ محبوب	famous/favoured	unknown/unpopular	غير معروف/ غير محبوب
rescue	ينقذ	keep/conserve	endanger	يعرض للخطر

Notes on Vocabulary

voyage flight trip journey picnic

voyage رحلة بحرية
- The explorer's voyage on the ocean was amazing.

flight رحلة جوية
- The air hostess of the plane helped me to enjoy my flight to London.

trip رحلة قصيرة (لغرض معين)
- My father went on a business trip to China to buy new machines.

journey رحلة طويلة (غالبًا برية)
- Although the train journey to Aswan was tiring, we enjoyed the sights.

picnic نزهة
- City people usually enjoy picnics to the countryside.

recommend advise

recommend
١- يرشح/يزكى
٢- يوصى بـ
- My boss recommended me for the new management department.
- Ali recommended me all Taha Hussein's books to read.

لاحظ استخدام مفعول قبل صيغة (to + inf.)

advise ينصح (بفعل شيء)
- My mother always advises me to work hard to get high marks.

except accept expect

except (for) فيما عدا
- All the team were there except (for) Ahmed Hegazi, who was injured.

accept يقبل
- They offered her a job, and she accepted at once.
- I was happy to accept my father's present on my birthday.

expect يتوقع
- He expected his father to be angry with him for coming late.

crew **staff** **cast**

crew — طاقم (مجموعة من الأشخاص يقومون بتشغيل مركبة مثل سفينة/ طائرة)

- My friend joined the crew of a large fishing boat.
- Ambulance crews worked hard to rescue people in the terrible accident.

staff — طاقم عمل فى شركة أو مؤسسة

- On Wednesdays there's our company's weekly staff meeting.

cast — طاقم العمل فى مسرحية أو فيلم

- War and legendary films have a cast of thousands.

route **road** **street**

route — طريق/ مسار بين مكانين

- I live on a bus route so I can easily get to work.

road — طريق ممهد يربط بين مدينتين

- The road from Cairo to Sharqia goes through some beautiful countryside.

street — شارع داخل المدينة

- She crossed the street and walked into the bank.

review **revision**

review — ١- مراجعة/ إعادة نظر
٢- نقد/ مقال نقدى

- No one has yet carried out a review of the security system.
- The singer's new album has had very good reviews.

revision — مراجعة/ إعادة نظر

- Ali hasn't done enough revision for tomorrow's exam.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... this film for all people who like adventure films.
   a) regret b) recommend c) advise d) consult
2. I .... Mona will be late for the party, as usual.
   a) except b) accept c) expect d) excerpt

crew **staff** **cast**

crew طاقم (مجموعة من الأشخاص يقومون بتشغيل مركبة مثل سفينة/ طائرة)

- My friend joined the crew of a large fishing boat.
- Ambulance crews worked hard to rescue people in the terrible accident.

staff طاقم عمل فى شركة أو مؤسسة

- On Wednesdays there's our company's weekly staff meeting.

cast طاقم العمل فى مسرحية أو فيلم

- War and legendary films have a cast of thousands.

route **road** **street**

route طريق/ مسار بين مكانين

- I live on a bus route so I can easily get to work.

road طريق ممهد يربط بين مدينتين

- The road from Cairo to Sharqia goes through some beautiful countryside.

street شارع داخل المدينة

- She crossed the street and walked into the bank.

review **revision**

review
١ - مراجعة/ إعادة نظر
٢ - نقد/ مقال نقدى

- No one has yet carried out a review of the security system.
- The singer's new album has had very good reviews.

revision مراجعة/ إعادة نظر

- Ali hasn't done enough revision for tomorrow's exam.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... this film for all people who like adventure films.
   a) regret b) recommend c) advise d) consult
2. I .... Mona will be late for the party, as usual.
   a) except b) accept c) expect d) excerpt

3 The ship was badly damaged during the .... from Japan to America due to the storm.

a) voyage b) flight c) picnic d) expedition

4 The historical play has a large .... of actors who played different roles.

a) crew b) staff c) cast d) team

5 The film got excellent .... when it was first seen.

a) revisions b) essays c) paragraphs d) reviews

6 I bought these sunglasses from a .... seller in the city.

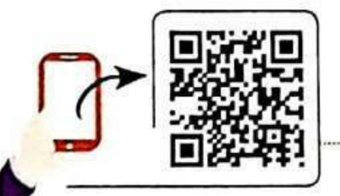
a) road b) street c) route d) ring

7 We sat on the river bank and had a ....

a) voyage b) flight c) journey d) picnic

8 A good education is often the best .... to a good job.

a) route b) road c) street d) path



Listening Text

Voice :



When his novel, Moby Dick, came out in 1851, Herman Melville had been writing for five years. He had already written two books called Typee and Omoo and was popular in Britain and America. Today, Moby Dick is his most famous novel but at first people didn't like it. But let's start at the beginning and look at what Herman Melville had done before he wrote his greatest work. Melville was born into a good New York family in 1819. His father, who imported(1) goods from France, died when Herman was twelve. After he had left school, the young boy worked in very ordinary jobs in offices and on farms.

By the age of twenty, Herman was bored with the jobs he had been doing and decided to look for adventure. So, in 1839, he went to sea – first on a whaling(2) ship, and later on a navy ship. During one of his voyages he went ashore(3) on the Maquesas Islands and lived for a few months with the primitive(4) Typee people. In his mid-twenties, Melville returned to live with his mother and write about his adventures. Tom, the hero of his novel Typee, spends four exciting months

(1) يستورد

(2) صيد الحيتان

(3) للشاطئ

(4) بدائي

with a group of island people. His second novel, Omoo, was about Melville's life on islands in the Pacific Ocean. People loved reading about the unusual life Melville had been living in these strange, remote[5] places, and so both these novels were very successful. In 1847, Melville married Elizabeth Shaw and they bought a farm. Here, Melville worked for eight hours a day on his third novel, Moby Dick, which came out[6] in 1851. This was a serious book and many of his readers were disappointed because it was not the exciting adventure[7] story his first two novels had been. Melville continued to write short stories and poems[8], but wrote nothing important except a story called Billy Budd. Melville had not finished this final novel about life at sea at the time of his death in 1891.

(5) بعيد/ ناءٍ
(6) صَدرَ
(7) مغامرة
(8) قصائد

Reading Text

The Story of *Moby Dick*

Ishmael, the novel's storyteller, went to sea on a whaling ship called the Pequod. The ship's captain, Ahab, had lost a leg when his ship was attacked by a great white whale called Moby Dick on his last voyage. Ahab told his men that the purpose[1] of their voyage was to hunt and kill Moby Dick and he offered a gold coin to the first sailor who saw him.



The Pequod sailed round the continent[2] of Africa into the Indian Ocean[3]. When they met other ships which had been whaling in the area, Ahab asked their captains if they had seen Moby Dick. A sailor from one of these ships predicted that anyone who tried to kill Moby Dick would die. After this, there were many accidents on the Pequod, but nothing stopped Ahab. He was determined[4] to kill the whale which he thought of as his enemy[5].

Suddenly, a storm hit the Pequod and one of the sailors fell to his death from the ship. Soon after this, they saw Moby Dick and Ahab sent out men armed[6] with harpoons[7] in a small boat, but the whale

(1) غرض
(2) قارة
(3) محيط
(4) مصمم/ عازم
(5) عدو
(6) مسلح
(7) رمح صيد الحيتان

destroyed the boat. The next day, more boats were sent out and, although a harpoon hit the whale, Moby Dick was strong enough to attack the Pequod. On the third day, boats were sent out again and this time the whale rammed and sank the ship. Captain Ahab was pulled out on a harpoon rope and died attached[8] to the whale. The boat sank and all the crew[9] drowned[10] except Ishmael, who held onto some floating wood. He was rescued by another whaling ship and lived to tell the story.

(8) متصل بـ
(9) طاقم
(10) يغرق

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1. the novel's storyteller, went to sea on a whaling ship
- لا تأخذ كلمة sea أداة التعريف the لأنها للغرض الرئيسي حيث إن الشخص كان بحارًا.
2. .... and he offered a gold coin to the first sailor who saw him.
- استخدام him لغير العاقل للتجسيد إذ إنه اعتبر الحوت عدوًا يحارب.
3. and Ahab sent out men armed with harpoons in a small boat
- كلمة armed بمعنى مسلح وهى صفة استخدمت من التصريف الثالث عندما تكون الجملة مبنية للمجهول مثل:
armed forces/broken chair/canned food, etc.
4. Moby Dick was strong enough to attack the Pequod.
- كلمة enough عندما نستخدم قبلها صفة نستخدم بعدها .to + inf في شكل المبنى للمعلوم مثل:
easy enough to answer/light enough to carry/cheap enough to buy.
5. The boat sank and all the crew drowned.
- تذكر أن الفعل sink/sank/sunk يغرق للأشياء وأن الصفة منه sunken وأن drown/ed/ed يغرق للأشخاص.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some .... men broke into the bank and ran away with a lot of money.
a) charmed b) armed c) arms d) permanent
2. The applicant sent a recent photo .... to his application form.
a) protected b) communicated c) detatched d) attached
3. The thieves .... a car into the shop window to break it, then they stole everything in the shop.
a) rallied b) rammed c) roamed d) rained
4. I don't understand what this machine is for. Do you know what its .... is?
a) purpose b) reason c) story d) title

5 .... is the activity or business of hunting and killing whales.
a) Farming b) Fishing c) Wrestling d) Whaling

6 The island is very .... It takes about three days to get there by boat.
a) remote b) close c) isolate d) separate

7 The sailors left their ship and went .... in a small boat to explore the island.
a) shore b) ashore c) board d) broad

8 .... people are those who lived on hunting animals thousands of years ago.
a) Aggressive b) Advanced c) Civilised d) Primitive

9 A little boy fell into the river and .... while he was playing with his friends.
a) drawn b) drowned c) sunk d) crowned

10 The honest policeman was .... and seriously injured by a gang of thieves.
a) attacked b) attracted c) attached d) attended

11 My uncle joined the .... of a large fishing boat many years ago.
a) population b) crew c) cast d) staff

12 My son works very hard at school because he is .... to join a good university.
a) decided b) determined c) contributed d) objected

13 On 6th October, all the Egyptian people celebrate the great victory over the ....
a) hero b) champion c) post d) enemy

14 The Egyptian .... are responsible for protecting our borders at sea.
a) band b) gang c) university d) navy

15 The Panama Canal provides a link between the Atlantic and Pacific ....
a) rivers b) seas c) Oceans d) lakes

16 A .... is a sharp metal used for hunting whales and big fish.
a) ruler b) knife c) harpoon d) key

17 Europe and Asia are two .... which lie next to each other.
a) continents b) places c) islands d) areas

18 I don't really like funny films or books. I prefer .... ones.
a) serious b) ambitious c) careless d) servant

19 Al Azhar tunnel is the quickest .... taken by most drivers to reach downtown Cairo.
a) road b) journey c) route d) map

20 We asked the .... of the ship to let us stay on deck.
a) pilot b) driver c) rider d) captain

21 No one can .... when an earthquake happens.
a) intend b) predict c) attend d) pretend

22 During the race a motorboat struck a rock and began to ....
a) sing b) sink c) bang d) shrink

23 Although Taha Hussein was born .... a big family, he became a great writer.
a) on b) at c) with d) into

24 Coffee and tea are probably the most .... drinks in the world.
a) cruel b) aggressive c) popular d) unkind

25 Unluckily, we .... most of our needs from other countries.
a) sell b) export c) produce d) import

26 Policemen worked for two hours to .... people who were trapped in the bus.
a) kill b) hunt c) shoot d) rescue

27 The child became worried when he saw the look of .... over his mother's face.
a) serious b) seriously c) seriousness d) series

28 We import cars, mobiles and other .... from China nowadays.
a) woods b) goods c) reeds d) deeds

29 When the novel came ...., it was a great success.
a) in b) out c) off d) on

30 Road safety rules are taught to young children to .... road accidents.
a) attract b) attend c) avoid d) attach

31 I hope my boss got my .... that I was going to be late.
a) massage b) message c) passage d) mission

32 The pilot lost control of the plane and crashed .... a high tower.
a) on b) at c) with d) into

33 It was a great shock that Titanic sank on its first ....
a) flight b) voyage c) discovery d) exploration

34 I felt a little .... when my team lost the match.
a) disappointed b) appointed c) acquainted d) imparted

35 The photo is attached .... the application form, sir.
a) on b) with c) into d) to

36 I definitely .... this hotel for its good service.
a) tell b) advise c) say d) recommend

37 The .... of the film died in the end, so people didn't like the film.
a) champion b) worker c) hero d) plumber

38 The biggest .... of the match was when Egypt scored the third goal.
a) excitement b) excited c) exciting d) excites

39 Mr Essam has been writing .... of films and plays for ten years.
a) revisions b) reviews c) revivers d) survivors

40 The man .... to his death, while he was trying to fix the hole in his house's roof.
a) went b) rose c) climbed d) fell

41 Herman Melville's novel Moby Dick, came .... in 1851.
a) up b) out c) down d) back

42 Many laws and rules punish people who .... rare animals.
a) hold b) hunt c) chant d) grant

43 My father .... to take us to the club on his way to work.
a) requested b) borrowed c) hired d) offered

44 The story is good because it is written in a friendly, ... language.
a) abnormal b) complicated c) ordinary d) average

45 The young boy had Mickey Mouse and some other cartoon .... on his sweater.
a) characters b) codes c) personalities d) samples

46 People need to be patient and hardworking to reach their .... in life.
a) changes b) nets c) goals d) failures

47 A lot of the machines at the factory are very...................., so the products aren't very good.
a) modern b) old-fashioned c) fashionable d) historical

48 I'd like to travel .... to do postgraduate studies.
a) abroad b) aboard c) broad d) board

49 We should work hard to .... our fight against terrorism.
a) beat b) gain c) lose d) win

50 The minister was asked about the pay increase, but made no ....
a) content b) comment c) winning d) symbol

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In a new city, you've got .... of space to park your car.
a) seas b) oceans c) piles d) distances

2 The programmer must delete the data once it has .... its purpose.
a) served b) designed c) gained d) spent

3 A novel should not be too .... from the experiences of its readers.
a) close b) helpful c) remote d) relevant

4 It's easy to become .... to the children you work with.
a) attacked b) attended c) attribute d) attached

5 My cousin likes to .... his food with hot tomato sauce.
a) float b) drown c) feed d) sink

6 Many drivers are their own worst .... driving too close or driving too fast.
a) helper b) officer c) enemy d) tutor

7 We need help to know how to .... files from database onto the hard disk quickly.
a) import b) export c) arrange d) disorganise

8 The advertisement are designed to .... home the dangers of smoking near children.
a) shock b) slam c) surprise d) ram

9 The word "conserve" is a synonym to the word ....
a) waste b) rescue c) grow d) attack

10 The President .... the soliders on his recent visit to the Military College.
a) witnessed b) assigned c) reviewed d) observed

Grammar



The Past Perfect Tense الماضى التام

Form التكوين	**Subj. + had + P.P.**	By last week, I had written 5 reports.
Negative النفى	**hadn't + P.P.**	I hadn't seen him before he talked to me.
Interrogative الاستفهام	**Had + Subj. + P.P.?**	What had she done before going out?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	**Obj. + had been + P.P.**	By yesterday, all the tickets had been sold.

Usage الاستخدام

For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past:

يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضٍ آخر أو قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى (الحدث الأول تام والثانى بسيط).

- I punished him because he had made many mistakes.
- By 7 o'clock yesterday, I had finished my homework.

For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.

يستخدم لحدث انتهى فى الماضى ونتيجته كانت واضحة فى الماضى.

- He was happy because he had passed the exam.

The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

Key Words

before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as, etc.

1. *After* / *As soon as* + Past perfect (ماضٍ تام) , Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط)

2. *Before* / *By the time* + Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط) , Past perfect (ماضٍ تام)

- After I had watched the film, I went to bed.
- Before I went to bed, I had watched the film.

3. ماضٍ بسيط منفي **till/until** ماضٍ تام

- My son didn't buy his new mobile phone until I had given him the money.



لا يجب حفظ قاعدة واحدة لـ until فالمشكلة ليست فى الشكل بل المعنى فتأمل الأمثلة القادمة:

- He refused to leave the place until he had taken the money.
- He lived in Cairo until he died.
- He wasn't given the job until the boss had signed the application form.
- He couldn't travel until he had got a passport.

- يمكن استخدام until للمستقبل وبعدها مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام:

- I will wait here until Ali comes
- I won't help him until I finish (have finished) my work.

4 *After* + n./v-ing , ماضٍ بسيط

Before + n./v-ing , ماضٍ تام

- After finishing his work, he helped me. = After he had finished ....
- Before helping me, he had finished his work. = Before he helped ....

5 لاحظ الفرق بين جمل when الآتيـــة:

When + Past simple, Past perfect

- When I woke up, my father had left. غادر والدى قبل استيقاظى (لم أرَ والدى)

When + Past simple, Past simple

- When I woke up, my father left. غادر والدى عند استيقاظى (رأيت والدى)

When + Past perfect, Past simple

- When I had told him the bad news, he fainted. أخبرته أولًا ثم أغمى عليه ثانيًا

6 يمكن استخدام معظم الكلمات التى تستخدم مع المضارع التام مع الماضى التام مثل:

already, just, since, for, ever, never, how long ....etc.

- When my father returned back home, I had already finished my homework.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 By the time I met Amal, she .... shopping.
a) has finished b) finishes c) had finished d) finishing

2 I showed my mother what I .... from the market.
a) was buying b) have bought c) had bought d) will buy

3 I punished him because he .... lies to his family.
a) had been telling b) had told c) was telling d) has been telling

4 At 7.15 yesterday evening, I .... the final match.
a) was watching b) will watch c) am watching d) have watched

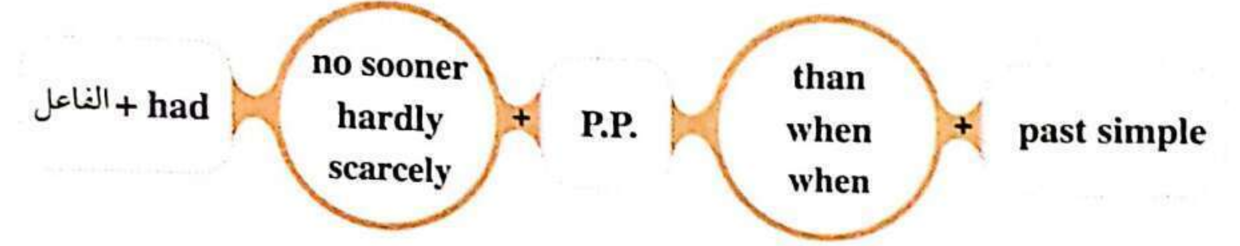
5 My brother ate all of the cake that our mum ....
a) makes b) had made c) has made d) is made

Extra Points

❶


- No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات فى أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة وإذا لم تأتِ فى أول الكلام يكون الآتى:



- Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported the police.

❷ **On + v-ing = when + clause**

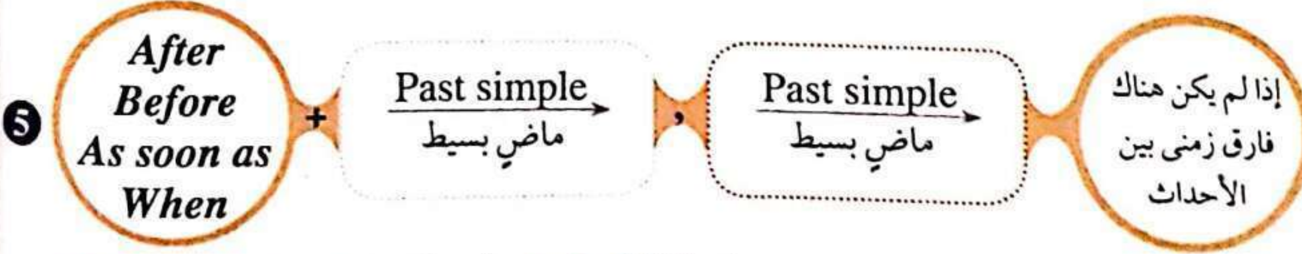
- On seeing the thief, he ran away. = When he saw the thief, he ran away.

❸ **By + فترة فى الماضى + ماضٍ تام**

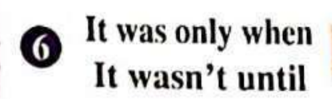
- By yesterday بحلول أمس, he had reached Paris.

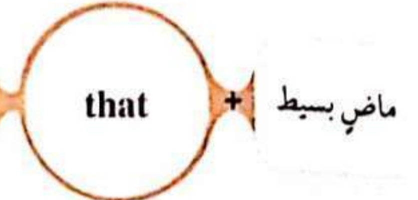
❹ **Having + P.P. = After + Past perfect**

- Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit.

❺


- When he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.
- After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.
- Before he left, he asked me to close the door behind him.
- As soon as he read the story, he gave it to me.





6 It was only when / It wasn't until + إنه فقط عندما / لم يكن حتى + ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط

- It was only when he had finished his work that he helped me.
- It wasn't until he had finished his work that he helped me.




ملحوظة هامة جداً

إذا وجد أكثر من حدثين فى الجملة فيجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضع ماض تام والأحداث الباقية إما ماضٍ بسيط وإما مستمر حسب المعنى.

- As soon as I saw Ahmed, I realised that I had forgotten his book at home.

لم نضع الماضى التام بعد as soon as مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (نسيان الكتاب)

- After he got to the station, he realised that he had left the train ticket at home.

لم نضع الماضى التام بعد After مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة فى المنزل)

- I was shopping with my friend when I realised that I had lost my wallet.

الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.

2 Past Perfect Continuous

الماضى التام المستمر

Form: التكوين	**Subj. + had been + v-ing**	When I met Ali, he had been walking for 2 hours.
Negative: النفى	**Subj. + hadn't been + v-ing**	I wasn't tired as I hadn't been driving for long.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	**(Wh-word) + had + Subj. + been + v-ing?**	What had they been doing before I met them?

Usage

الاستخدام

١- يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى (بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى) قبل وقوع حدث ماضٍ آخر.

- They had been looking for a house for six months before they found one they liked.

٢- يعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة فى الماضى ونتيجته كانت واضحة فى الماضى أيضًا.

- He had been working hard on the garden all day, so he was tired.
- At last the bus came. I had been waiting for 30 minutes.

٣- يأتى الماضى التام المستمر عادة مع أفعال يمكن أن تستغرق فترة طويلة مثل:

wait/ do/ study/ live/ work/ stay/ play/ watch/ sleep/ paint/ read/ write/talk/ run/ walk/ travel

- I was very tired when I arrived home. I had been working hard all day.
- He had been smoking for 30 years when he finally gave it up.
- They had been waiting for an hour before the train arrived.
- What had he been doing when the accident happened?

لا يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر مع الأفعال التى لا تستغرق وقتًا طويلًا مثل:

finish/ take/ leave/ borrow/ send/ join/ buy/ crash/ break/ get

- I left the cinema as soon as the film had finished.

٤- يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية.

for/ since/ how long/ before/ until/ all + مدة زمنية

- Ali had been trying to call me for 10 minutes before I finally answered the phone.

٥- إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل نستخدم الماضى التام وليس الماضى التام المستمر.

- When I met Ahmed, he had finished typing 3 reports.

٦- لاحظ أن أفعال الحب والكراهية والشعور والإحساس والرأى والملكية لا تستخدم فى الأزمنة المستمرة حتى مع وجود كلمات تدل على الاستمرار فى الجملة مثل:

know/ own/ love/ hate/ like/ belong to/ have/ forget/ remember/ be/ believe/ think

- We had had that car for ten years before it broke down.

ولكن إذا تغير معنى الفعل يمكن أن يستخدم فى الاستمرار مثل:

- I had been thinking to change my flat all night before my brother came and told me not to do it.

فى الجملة السابقة think بمعنى يفكر وليس يعتقد.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... for half an hour before I realised that I was dangerously far away from the beach.

a) had been swimming
b) had swum
c) swam
d) was swimming

2 When Ali went to university, he .... English for ten years.

a) had studied
b) had been studying
c) has been studying
d) was studying

3 I was tired yesterday morning because I .... until late the night before.

a) had read
b) was reading
c) have been reading
d) had been reading

4 My friend and I .... for more than an hour before I put the phone down.

a) talked
b) were talking
c) had been talking
d) have been talking

5 Although Ali .... for six months, he didn't win an Olympic medal.

a) had been training
b) was training
c) had trained
d) is training

6 When his novel Moby Dick came out in 1851, Herman Melville .... for five years.

a) had written
b) had been writing
c) wrote
d) has written

7 When the bus arrived at six o'clock, I .... for an hour.

a) waited
b) was waiting
c) had been waiting
d) had waited

8 There were floods because it .... for three days.

a) was raining
b) has been raining
c) is raining
d) had been raining

9 Ali wasn't feeling well yesterday as he .... hard all weekend.

a) had been studying
b) had studied
c) studied
d) was studying

10 When the lights went out, I .... the match for about half an hour.

a) was watching
b) have been watching
c) had been watching
d) will watch



لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... in the boat for two hours when I caught a huge fish.
   a) was sitting b) sat
   c) had been sitting d) have been sitting
2. I heard that Ola .... her leg.
   a) had broken b) had been breaking c) was breaking d) has broken
3. We .... for 5 hours when our car ran out of petrol.
   a) had driven b) had been driving c) drove d) have been driving
4. Why did no one tell me that my computer ....?
   a) had crashed b) has crashed c) was crashing d) had been crashing
5. How long .... for the train before it arrived?
   a) have you been waiting b) did you wait
   c) had you been waiting d) were you waiting
6. Did you know that Hany .... his plans?
   a) changes b) has changed
   c) had been changing d) had changed
7. It .... for hours when the sun finally came out.
   a) had been raining b) had rained
   c) rained d) have been raining
8. I left home before I realised that I .... my mobile phone.
   a) have forgot b) forgot
   c) had forgotten d) had been forgetting
9. Osama .... somewhere to live in when Ramy offered him a room.
   a) found b) had already found
   c) has already found d) is finding
10. I didn't know you .... a new laptop.
    a) have bought b) had bought
    c) had been buying d) are buying
11. I was late because I .... for my glasses.
    a) had looked for b) have looked
    c) had been looking d) have been looking

12 Maher was very rude to Karim considering he .... him for a few days.

a) only knows
b) knew only
c) had only been knowing
d) had only known

13 I didn't get your email because it .... to my old address.

a) had been sent
b) had sent
c) have sent
d) had been sending

14 I can't believe you didn't realise that it .... all night! Everything was soaked.

a) had rained
b) had been rained
c) had been raining
d) have been raining

15 When it began to rain, the players .... for ten minutes.

a) are playing
b) played
c) have been playing
d) had been playing

16 We .... 100 km before the rain started.

a) have driven
b) had been driving
c) had driven
d) were driving

17 My father .... as a police officer for 30 years before he finally retired.

a) has worked
b) had been working
c) has been working
d) was working

18 The shop .... the table by the time I got there.

a) sold
b) had been selling
c) have been selling
d) had sold

19 They .... for hours before they stopped for a rest.

a) walked
b) had been walking
c) have been walking
d) was walking

20 Kareem .... a shower after he had played a football match.

a) was having
b) had
c) had had
d) had been having

21 We .... the house all day when Tamer called round.

a) had been cleaning
b) had cleaned
c) cleaned
d) are cleaning

22 Hardly .... his car when he used it.

a) he had repaired
b) would he repair
c) had he repaired
d) he repaired

23 After he .... school, the young boy worked in very ordinary jobs.

a) leaves
b) had been leaving
c) was leaving
d) had left

24 My mother looked exhausted. She .... for two hours.

a) cooks
b) is cooking
c) had been cooking
d) has cooked

25 By the time my mother was aged 30, she .... five children.

a) was had
b) had had
c) had been having
d) have had

6 Aya watched television after .... her lesson.

a) has written b) writing c) wrote d) had written

7 By the time Maya finished reading the report, she .... two bottles of water.

a) had been drinking
b) had drunk
c) drank
d) was drinking

8 She went to the doctor as her leg .... for two days.

a) is aching
b) was aching
c) has been aching
d) had been aching

9 Melville .... his final novel about life at sea at the time of his death.

a) wasn't finishing
b) had not finished
c) had not been finishing
d) hasn't finished

10 He .... as a clerk for seven years before he resigned.

a) works b) has worked c) had been working d) is working

11 My aunt decided to change the date of the family party, even though she .... out 20 invitations.

a) was already sending
b) had already been sending
c) has already sent
d) had already sent

12 We .... since sunrise, and we were hungry.

a) had been walking
b) have been walking
c) walked
d) were walking

13 Mariam looked so happy when we saw her last week. Perhaps she .... good grades on her exams.

a) got b) had been getting c) had got d) has got

14 I asked him what he .... since I saw him last year.

a) was doing
b) had been doing
c) has been doing
d) did

15 By the time Herman Melville was in his mid-twenties, he .... all over the world.

a) already travelled
b) had already travelled
c) had already been travelling
d) has already travelled

16 He looked tired because the day before he .... his father for eight hours.

a) has been helping b) was helping c) had been helping d) has helped

17 After my work ...., I had a break.

a) had done b) had been doing c) had been done d) having done

18 We .... in the same house for twelve years before we decided to move.

a) were living b) are living c) have been living d) had been living

39 She was upset because she .... to hear from her son for days.

a) had waited
b) had been waiting
c) has waited
d) has been waiting

40 He stayed in bed that day because he .... ill all week.

a) had been feeling
b) has been feeling
c) is feeling
d) feels

41 Did you know that Susan .... behind because of her bad behaviour?

a) has left
b) had left
c) had been left
d) had been leaving

42 Bill Gates .... lots of money before he even left school?

a) had made
b) had been making
c) has made
d) was making

43 Amira looked very tired. She .... the flat for a long time.

a) cleaned
b) was cleaning
c) has been cleaning
d) had been cleaning

44 After he .... back home, he realised that he had taken another bag by mistake.

a) went
b) was going
c) had been going
d) had gone

45 He lived in Cairo until he .... in 1990.

a) dies
b) has died
c) died
d) had died

46 This car .... to Tamer for years before Hussein bought it.

a) had belonged
b) had been belonging
c) belongs
d) has belonged

47 My uncle .... the army for 20 years before he retired.

a) has joined
b) has been joining
c) had been joining
d) had joined

48 The flat .... for 3 days before you came.

a) had been cleaning
b) had been cleaned
c) had cleaned
d) was cleaning

49 I .... happy until I had passed my exams.

a) hadn't been
b) didn't be
c) weren't
d) wasn't

50 When I phoned Ahmed, he .... letters to 6 of his friends for hours.

a) had been writing
b) has been writing
c) had written
d) was writing

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

1 .... I'd really like is some peace and quiet.
a) How b) Which c) What d) Where

2 It can be difficult living abroad when you don't speak .... international language.
a) the b) a c) no article d) an

3 I'd rather .... a new TV than have this old one repaired.
a) buying b) buys c) to buy d) buy

4 Everyone knows that when ice melts, it .... into water.
a) turns b) would turn c) will turn d) can turn

5 The suspect denied .... a pair of jeans from the shop.
a) steal b) stolen c) stealing d) to steal

6 She insists that we .... get up early in the morning.
a) could b) should c) might d) can

7 He has said something bad .... he should apologise.
a) to which b) about which c) which d) for which

8 The person .... I spoke to had an American accent.
a) who b) when c) whose d) to whom

9 They set off early .... avoiding the rush hour traffic.
a) with a view b) so as to c) with the aim of d) so that

10 The unhappy customer spoke .... to the shop manager.
a) anger b) angrily c) angry d) angrier

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Making recommendations and giving reasons القيام بتوصيات وإعطاء الأسباب

Making recommendations	*Giving reasons*
• I'm sure you'd enjoy/love this book. • You really should read this book. • I can (really) recommend this book (to you)	• It's a very (exciting/interesting) story. • The characters are so real. • You won't be able to put it down. • It's so (easy) to read.

Writing: A Book Review

Plan a book review using your notes from the Student's Book.

a) Start with the main details of the book. In your notebook, write about:
- the title.
- the writer.
- when the book was written.
- when you read it.

b) What is the book about? Write one or two sentences about the story.
c) Who are the main characters? Write a sentence about one or two characters.
d) What did you like about the book?

Model Essay

Oliver Twist is a novel written by Charles Dickens, a man who had a difficult life. He had worked since he was a child and he had no money. He gave Oliver, the hero, those characteristics. He wanted to show how hard orphans and poor children suffered in life.

The story is about a child, whose mother had died just after he was born in a workhouse. Oliver was an innocent and pure boy. When he was nine, he was sent out from the workhouse as an apprentice. He worked with a coffin maker called Mr. Sowerberry. The man was kind but his wife treated Oliver so badly that she made him sleep with coffins. Oliver decided to escape from there.

On his way to London, he met a boy called Artful Dodger and then ended up with Fagin, the leader of a gang of thieves, who taught children how to steal. Luckily, Oliver also found people who took good care of him and helped him with some problems he had had. A man called Mr. Brownlow cared for him until he knew who was behind his problems.

In my opinion, the novel is very exciting and it makes you want to read more. I liked the fact that Fagin and Sikes tried to change Oliver, but he continued to be an innocent good boy. My favourite character is Mr. Brownlow, who took care of Oliver and loved him despite the things he had done, and his past. I liked the end, and I wouldn't change anything in the book.

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. A review of a film which you have just watched.
2. The way advertisements can affect people.

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills, habits and values. It helps people become useful members of the society.

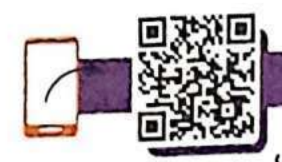
2. Many projects will be built on the banks of the new Suez Canal. This will increase national income and offer many job opportunities.
3. The story of Moby Dick teaches us that ambition and revenge should have limits. Without limits, they cause us much harm.
4. No real progress can be made in our society where wives and mothers are ignorant. Educated families have an important role in any development.
5. Always believe that there is a light at the end of the tunnel. It may seem hard to get to it but you can do it.
6. Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless. So, we must try to solve these serious problems.

B) Translate into English:

١ – يعتقد الكثيرون أن عمل البحارة مشوق متجاهلين الأخطار التى يواجهونها يوميًّا.
٢ – بالرغم من أن قصص المغامرات تمتلئ بالإثارة إلا أنها تحمل رسائل وعبر تفيد القارئ.
٣ – للإعلانات أثر كبير فى الكثير من قرارات الشراء لدى معظم الناس لذا ينفق المنتجون ملايين الجنيهات عليها.
٤ – لا يجب أن يصبح المال هدف الإنســان الوحيد فى الحياة فالكثير من الأشــياء الجميلة لا يمكن شراؤها بالمال مثل الحب والسعادة.
٥ – يجب أن نشــجع الشباب على الالتحاق بالنوادى الرياضية التى تســهم فى توجيههم لما يفيدهم ويحميهم من مخاطر التطرف والإرهاب.
٦ – يقال إن المتفائلين أكثر سعادة وأطول عمرًا من المتشائمين فاترك التشائم وتفاءل بكل ما هو جميل فى الحياة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

educated	متعلم	morals	عِبَر / دروس مستفادة
extremism	التطرف	national income	الدخل القومى
happiness	السعادة	poverty	الفقر
ignorant	جاهل	revenge	الانتقام
job opportunities	فرص العمل	terrorism	الإرهاب
limits	حدود	tunnel	نفق
optimist	متفائل	pessimist	متشائم



Test 2 Based on Unit 10

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The police found the man dead .... to an iron gate.

a) protected b) communicated c) affected d) attached

2 The thieves' car .... the school bus from behind, while trying to escape.

a) rallied b) rammed c) roamed d) rained

3 The two boys looked very tired. They .... football for two hours.

a) play b) have been playing c) had been playing d) would play

4 I was .... to come first in the final test and join a good university.

a) decided b) determined c) contributed d) objected

5 He was unhappy that he .... from his job.

a) had been dismissed b) had dismissed c) was being dismissed d) had been dismissing

6 Ann woke in the middle of the night. She looked very frightened. Perhaps she ....

a) is dreaming b) had been dreaming c) has dreamt d) dreams

7 The company is .... in debt and has a very serious time.

a) drowning b) borrowing c) spending d) believing

8 The firefighters looked exhausted. They .... to put out the fire for two hours.

a) had tried b) had been trying c) have been trying d) were trying

9 I .... everywhere for my keys, and then I found them still in the door!

a) researched b) chased c) dug d) hunted

10 After .... the robbers, I phoned the police.

a) seeing b) had been seeing c) had seen d) see

11 The word "endanger " is the opposite of ....

a) waste b) rescue c) grow d) attack

12 He can .... see anything without his glasses.

a) recently b) wrongly c) completely d) hardly

13. She .... at that company for a year when she got a promotion.
   a) will be working b) works c) had been working d) has been working
14. I .... for hours when I finally found the house.
   a) would walk b) walk c) was walking d) 'd been walking
15. We .... in Beni-Suif for three months before we had to leave.
   a) were living b) 'd been living c) will be living d) living
16. The children .... all day before their mother came back home from work!
   a) had been playing b) been playing
   c) have been playing d) were playing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Think about all the history and stories of our culture. We preserve them by writing them down in books. Today, we also have technology to use. In the early days, though, people did not have a language that could be written. They had only their own voices. They used their voices to pass down their history. They told special stories and spoke about their customs. These stories are called folklore.

Primitive people did not have a written language. Many of their stories were in the form of myths that explained mysteries of nature. Some were legends about past heroes of their culture. Many of the stories included elements of religion and magic. Modern methods of storytelling are available today. However, many tribes choose to continue the custom of oral storytelling and folklore. It is part of their cultural experience.

Many tribes have a history of believing in spirits. They believe that the spirits often take the form of animals found in nature. The animal spirits watch over them. However, they also see the ancient gods as animal tricksters. A trickster is a character who plays tricks and jokes on others. A trickster often causes trouble or inconvenience. It really doesn't mean any terrible harm, though.

Many traditional ceremonies use animal costumes. The ceremonies honour the animals in the hopes that they will save their tricks for someone else. Other ceremonies are held to help the tribe prepare for a special event. They celebrate things like marriages, births, battles, harvests or hunts.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 People in the past used .... to pass down their history.
a) one language b) technology c) different languages d) voices

18 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
a) history b) history and stories c) culture d) stories

19 People in the past believed that their gods could be in the form of ....
a) religious men b) hunters c) animal tricksters d) magicians

20 The antonym of the word "primitive" is ....
a) advanced b) original c) simple d) ancient

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why do you think many people continue storytelling even though other methods are available today?

22 What is a trickster?

23 Why do the ceremonies include animal costumes?

24 Mention two modern ways that can be used to preserve our culture.

25 Translate into Arabic:

We must forget our disagreements and disputes and unite for the sake of Egypt. It's our beloved country which has faced all hardships and remained strong against enemies.

26 Translate into English:

لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن إصلاح التعليم هو السبيل الأمثل لإصلاح الفرد والمجتمع؛ فالتعليم هو الطريقة الأمثل لبناء المواطن الصالح.

27 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

A review of a film which you have just watched.



Unit 11

Population, health and the environment

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for gist and for specific information; guessing the meaning of words
Grammar	: Future continuous and *may be + -ing*
Reading	: Reading for specific information and for detail
Critical thinking	: Understanding the problems of climate change
Functions	: Saying you are worried and reassuring a worried person
Writing	: Writing about the possible effects of climate change

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

arthritis (n)	التهاب المفاصل
cell (n)	خلية
cure (v) (d) (n)	يعالج/ علاج
decrease (v) (d)	يخفض/ يقلل
diabetes (n)	مرض السكرى
diabetic (adj)	مصاب بالسكرى
flood defences (n)	دفاعات ضد الفيضان
hostile (adj)	عدائى
hostility (n)	عداوة/ عداء
mend (v) (ed)	يصلح
North Pole (n)	القطب الشمالى
operate (v) (d)	يجرى عملية
operation (n)	عملية جراحية
progress (v) (ed) (n)	يتقدم/ يتحسن/ تقدم
rapid (adj)	سريع
South Pole (n)	القطب الجنوبى
tissue (n)	نسيج خلوى
trend (n)	موجة/ اتجاه
unrecognisable (adj)	غير معروف/ لا يمكن تمييزه
recognise (v) (d)	يتعرف على
recognition (n)	تعرف/ إدراك

Vocabulary On Listening

area (n)	منطقة
common (adj)	شائع/ معروف
currently (adv)	حاليًا
damaged (adj)	تالف
development (n)	تطور
difference (n)	اختلاف
disease (n)	مرض
distant (adj)	بعيد
excellent (adj)	ممتاز
healthy (adj)	صحى/ بصحة جيدة
health care (n)	رعاية صحية
laboratory (n)	معمل
manage (v) (d)	يدير/ يسيطر على
management (n)	إدارة
medicine (n)	طب/ دواء
medical (adj)	طبى
proud (adj)	فخور
pride (n)	فخر/ كبرياء
rare (adj)	نادر
repair (v) (ed) (n)	يصلح/ إصلاح
technique (n)	أسلوب/ تقنية
tradition (n)	تقليد/ عُرف
traditionally (adv)	تقليديًا
treat (v) (ed)	يعالج/ يعامل

Vocabulary On Reading

affect (v) (ed)	يؤثر على
cause (v) (d) (n)	يسبب/ مسبب
climate (n)	مناخ
desert (n) (adj)	صحراء/ صحراوى
effect (n)	تأثير
engineer (n)	مهندس
environment (n)	البيئة
environmental (adj)	بيئى
expert (n)	خبير
flood (v) (ed)	يفيض
go round (v)	يدور حول
gradually (adv)	بالتدريج
growing (adj)	نام/ متزايد
growth (n)	نمو
ice (n)	ثلج
import (v) (ed) (n)	يستورد/ استيراد
increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/ يزداد/ زيادة
melt (n) (v) (ed)	ذوبان/ يذوب
object (n)	شيء
population (n)	السكان
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
prediction (n)	تنبؤ
production (n)	إنتاج
reduce (v) (d)	يقلل/ يخفض
space (n)	الفضاء
total (adj)	إجمالى/ كلى

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

conclusion (n)	استنتاج
control (v) (led) (n)	يتحكم/ تحكم
describe (v) (d)	يصف
description (n)	وصف
drop out (v) (ped)	يترك (الدراسة)
earthquake (n)	زلزال
employment (n)	توظيف
equipment (n)	معدات
escape (v) (d)	يهرب
global warming (n)	الاحتباس الحرارى
headache (n)	صداع
illness (n)	مرض
make up (v)	يكون/ يُشَكِّل
pain (n)	ألم
painful (adj)	مؤلم
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
reassure (v) (d)	يطمئن
remove (v) (d)	يزيل
result (n)	نتيجة

Focus on Vocabulary

Word	Arabic	Definition
arthritis	التهاب المفاصل	a disease that causes pain and swelling in the joints of your body
cell	خلية	the smallest unit of a living body
cure	يعالج	to make someone better
decrease	يقلل/ يخفض	to become less
diabetes	مرض السكرى	a disease in which there is too much sugar in your blood
flood defence	دفاع ضد فيضان	protection against floods for towns and buildings
hostile	عدائى	describes something or someone who is very unpleasant, unfriendly and/or aggressive
mend	يصلح	repair something that is broken or damaged
North/South Pole	القطب الشمالى/ الجنوبى	the most southerly/northerly part of the world
operate	يجرى عملية	cut open someone's body to remove or repair a part that is damaged
planet	كوكب	a very large round object in the sky that moves around a star
progress	يتقدم	to move forward, develop or improve
rapid	سريع	done or happening very fast

tissue	نسيج خلوى	▸ what plant and animal cells are made of
trend	موجة/ اتجاه	▸ the way a situation is developing or progressing
unrecognisable	غير مميز	▸ changed so much that it seems completely different

Expressions & Idioms

at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	for example	على سبيل المثال
(be) made up of	مؤلَّف/ مكون من	keep fit	يحافظ على اللياقة
break his promise	يخلف وعده	make progress	يحرز تقدمًا
come true	يتحقق/ يصبح حقيقة	take turns	يتناوب الأدوار
do research into	يقوم ببحث على	work on the treatment of	يعمل على تطوير علاج

Phrases & Prepositions

agree with	يتفق مع	look at	ينظر إلى/ يفحص
effect on	تأثير على	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
escape from	يهرب من	proud of	فخور بـ
happen to	يحدث لـ	turn into	يتحول إلى
increase to	يزداد إلى	worry about	يقلق على

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
decrease	خفض	reduction	increase	زيادة
hostile	عدائي	adverse	friendly/peaceful	محبوب
mend	يصلح	repair	damage	يتلف
progress	تقدم	advance	decline	تدهور
rapid	سريع	speedy	slow	بطئ
unrecognisable	غير معـــروف/ لا يمكن تمييزه	indistinguishable	recognisable	مميز
manage	يدير/ يتحكم في	run	neglect	يهمل
rare	نادر	unusual	common	شائع
gradually	تدريجيًا	steadily	suddenly	فجأة
melt	يذوب	fade	solidify	يتصلب
total	كلي/ إجمالي	entire	partial	جزئي

Notes on Vocabulary

cure **heal** **treat**

cure يعالج/ يشفى (من مرض)
- It might be several months before she's fully cured.
- Many formerly fatal diseases can now be cured.

heal تلتئم (الجروح والكسور)
- The wound took a long time to heal.
- Vitamin K is needed by the body for healing cuts and bruises.

treat يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)
- Patients are treated with a combination of medication and exercise.

rare scarce

نادر (غير شائع/ غير مألوف جدًّا)

rare
- This species of plant is becoming increasingly rare.

شحيح/ قليل (صعب الحصول عليه)

scarce
- Fresh water and medicines were scarce in the war area.

prefix suffix

البادئة (هى مقطع يضاف فى بداية الكلمة لتغير معناها) ومنها :

prefix

١- بادئات تعطى عكس الكلمة:

- unhappy – unbelievable – unreal – impossible – dislike – inexpensive – nonorganic

٢- بادئات تعطى معانى أخرى:

- underline - submarine - rewrite - multinational - midnight - antivirus

suffix

اللاحقة (هى مقطع يضاف فى نهاية الكلمة لتغير نوعها كتحويلها إلى صفة أو اسم أو فعل) ومنها:

believe (v)	يصدق	believable (adj)	مصدق
agree (v)	يوافق	agreement (n)	اتفاق
envy (v) (n)	يحسد/ حسد	envious (adj)	حسود/ حاسد
educate (v)	يعلم	education (n)	تعليم
polite (adj)	مؤدب	politeness (n)	أدب
serve (v)	يخدم	servant (n)	خادم

tradition habit

تقليد(متبع من بلد أو مجتمع)

tradition
- By family tradition, it's the bride's parents who pay for the wedding.

عادة شخصية

habit
- Regular exercise is a good habit.

trend **wave**

trend موجة/ اتجاه سائد

- There is a growing trend towards payment by credit card.

wave موجة (مائية/ لاسلكية)

- The old man stood watching the waves breaking on the shore.

melt **molten**

melt يذوب (يتحول من صلب لسائل بفعل حرارة)

- The snow usually melts by mid March.

molten منصهر (فى حالة سائلة نتيجة للضغط أو الحرارة الشديدة)

- The town was buried under a river of molten lava of the volcano.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In wartime, food is often .... and very expensive.

a) common b) rare c) scarce d) cooked

2 Try to get into the .... of walking for 30 minutes each day.

a) custom b) tradition c) process d) habit

3 I didn't find any of the characters in the film .... They are imaginary ones

a) readable b) believable c) recognisable d) avoidable

4 It can take about one month for a broken arm to ....

a) heal b) cure c) treat d) spread

5 The book was .... because the paper is very old.

a) unbelievable b) unobtainable c) unreadable d) unacceptable

6 The villagers are all keen to keep their local ....

a) customs b) habits c) traditions d) costumes

7 The boat was damaged by an enormous ....

a) trend b) access c) drought d) wave

8 When the sun came out, the ice began to ....

a) melt b) molten c) solidify d) form



Listening Text



Presenter : Good afternoon and welcome to The World Tomorrow, the programme which looks into the future and predicts what life will be like in 20, 30 or 40 years time. Today's guest is a university professor of medicine who is currently doing research into new ways of treating common diseases. Welcome to the programme, Professor Osman. Could you start by telling us what kinds of diseases you are working on at the moment?

Professor Osman : Thank you, of course. At the moment, my research team and I are looking at three of the world's commonest diseases: diabetes(1), heart disease and arthritis(2). I'm pleased to say that we're making progress(3) in all three areas. We think that fewer people will be living with these diseases in the future.

Presenter : That's excellent news. So are you working on new treatments for these diseases?

Professor Osman : Yes, we are, but the most exciting news is that sometime in the not-too-distant future, we'll be treating these diseases to cure(4) them and not only to manage them.

Presenter : How is curing a disease different from managing it?

Professor Osman : Well, let's take the example of diabetes. At the moment we cannot cure diabetes. If someone has the disease, they'll always have it. We can only help people to manage it so that it doesn't become worse. In 2030 people may be taking medicines which cure diabetes completely, so that the person no longer has the disease.

Presenter : That really is very exciting. Could you explain how this is possible?

(1) مرض السكري
(2) التهاب المفاصل
(3) تقدم
(4) يعالج

Professor Osman : Well, traditionally doctors always treated diseases by giving their patients medicines of some kind or by operating[5] on them. In the future, we'll be using new cells[6] from patients to repair parts of their body which are damaged. So if a patient's heart is damaged, we'll be able to mend[7] it with new cells from the patient's own body. We'll also be making new tissue[8] from the cells in a laboratory.

(5) إجراء عملية
(6) خلايا
(7) يصلح
(8) نسيج خلوى

Presenter : This is fantastic. When are we likely to see these developments?

Professor Osman : I think that I'll be working on the project for the next 15 to 20 years.

Presenter : Thank you for being our guest this afternoon, Professor Osman, and for bringing such good news.

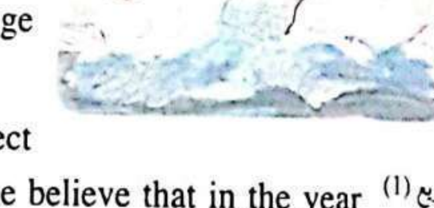
Professor Osman : It's my pleasure.



Reading Text

Our Future Environment

Many experts are predicting that the population of the world will increase to around ten billion by the year 2100. At the same time as the population increases, they believe that rapid[1] climate change will affect our environment.



Climate scientists are now looking at the effect of this trend[2] on our growing population. Some believe that in the year 2100 the planet[3] we will be living on will be almost unrecognisable[4].

Most people agree that over the next 50-100 years, the earth will be getting gradually warmer because of climate change. This means that the ice on mountains, at the North Pole[5] and at the South Pole[6] will be melting very quickly. This will probably cause serious floods and may mean that many people will have to leave their homes. The prediction is that in 2100, many millions of people will be living in different areas or even in different countries because of floods. Also, climate change will

(1) سريع
(2) موجه/اتجاه
(3) كوكب
(4) غير معروف
(5) القطب الشمالى
(6) القطب الجنوبى

turn other areas into desert and this will affect food production. This means that in the future, more people will be importing food from areas less affected by climate change.

It is also possible that the world's population may not increase to ten billion. If the effects of climate change mean that our environment becomes hostile[1], the population of some countries may even be decreasing[2] in around 40 years' time.

Of course, we cannot be sure that any of these predictions will come true. However, we can be certain that scientists and engineers will be working hard to reduce the effects of climate change, for example by building flood defences[3] to protect growing cities.

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

1 Could you explain how this is possible?

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة غير المباشر (الصيغة الخبرية) (this is) بعد التعبير (Could you explain)

2 and for bringing such good news.

- كلمة (such) تستخدم بمعنى جدًا إذا تبعها صفة + اسم، كما أنه لا تستخدم أداة نكرة لأن (news) اسم غير معدود.

3 If someone has the disease, they'll always have it.

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد بعد (someone) واستخدام ضمير جمع (they) للإشارة إليه.

4 Thank you for being our guest.

- كل حروف الجر مثل (for) يتبعها اسم أو صيغة (verb + ing).

5 .... more people will be importing food from areas less affected by climate change.

- في هذه الجملة حذف ضمير الوصل (which) و (v. to be) لأنه تبعها التصريف الثالث فأصل الجملة هو:
- .... more people will be importing food from areas which are less affected by climate change.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The new mobile phone is .... available only in America.
a) current b) currently c) currency d) occurrence

2 Over the next 50 years, our planet will get .... warmer.
a) lightly b) impossibly c) regularly d) gradually

3 This .... of the park has been specially designated for children.
a) area b) era c) district d) port

4 Scientists say that the red blood .... are renewed all the time.
a) calls b) cells c) plants d) points

5 Egypt hopes to make .... in all fields of life.
a) decrease b) failure c) effects d) progress

6 My mother suffers from .... Her joints cause her great pain.
a) arthritis b) dermatitis c) hepatitis d) diabetes

7 Using .... made in laboratories is a great medical advancement.
a) issues b) layers c) tissues d) leather

8 .... is a disease in which the body cannot properly control the amount of sugar in your blood.
a) Amnesia b) Arthritis c) Diabetes d) Insomnia

9 The garage man said the car was so old, it wasn't worth ....
a) damaging b) repairing c) recovering d) discovering

10 Scientists of medicine try to develop a/an .... for AIDS.
a) disease b) cure c) illness d) sickness

11 The man was very ill, so the doctors decided to .... on him.
a) operate b) process c) design d) explore

12 Scientists aren't sure that there is intelligent life on other .... in the solar system.
a) plants b) asteroids c) planets d) meteoroids

13 Many countries in South Asia have to set up flood .... to help their people.
a) defences b) defiances c) detectives d) delegates

14 Because of climate change, the environment can be .... to people.
a) friendly b) hospitable c) hostile d) tolerant

15 The word "......................"means changed so much that it seems completely different.
a) unreadable b) unrecognisable
c) unbelievable d) unbreakable

16 Eating healthy food is a popular .... in most civilised countries.
a) wave b) trend c) current d) tornado

17 The number of visitors to the museum .... from 5 million to 2 million.
a) increased b) modified c) reduced d) decreased

18 There has been a .... growth in the use of the internet especially among youth.
a) flexible b) rapid c) valid d) eventual

19 We hope that there may be a cure for all diseases in the not-too- .... future.
a) near b) bright c) distant d) gloomy

20 In the past 10 years, health .... has received more governmental attention.
a) transport b) care c) neglect d) indifference

21 Although some diseases like diabetes can't be cured, doctors can .... them.
a) treat b) heal c) damage d) manage

22 In most countries, there are laws that prevent hunting .... animals and birds.
a) rare b) scarce c) extinct d) wild

23 Medical .... have improved greatly in the last twenty years.
a) telescopes b) techniques c) tactics d) designs

24 My friend has spent the last two years working .... a book about childcare.
a) together b) with c) for d) on

25 Scientists are extremely worried about the ways in which climate change .... the Ozone.
a) develops b) renews c) affects d) modernise

26 Chemical waste from cars and factories is harmful to the ....
a) environment b) involvement c) excavation d) space

27 Too many students in poor countries .... out of school because of lack of money.
a) drop b) fall c) climb d) lift

28 A .... number of people are choosing to eat healthy and organic food.
a) grow b) grew c) growth d) growing

29 You can't trust people who often .... their promises.
a) break b) keep c) make d) smash

30 It is said that India has a .... of more than one billion.
a) pollution b) popularity c) population d) policy

31 Doctors always advise people to do exercises regularly to .... fit.
a) keep b) do c) make d) help

32 Neil Armstrong is one of the first Americans who went into .... and landed on the moon.

a) spice b) space c) planets d) galaxy

33 This book is made .... of twelve separate short stories.

a) into b) for c) in d) up

34 The .... cost of the project came to about seven million pounds.

a) quality b) quantity c) coastal d) total

35 The woman was able to give the police an accurate .... of the thief who stole her bag.

a) describe b) described c) description d) describing

36 The new laboratory in the college has all the latest ....

a) thoughts b) explorations c) equipment d) discoveries

37 The freezing temperatures had turned the water in the lake .... ice.

a) up b) back c) in d) into

38 Climate change is causing the polar ice at the poles to ....

a) melt b) heat c) freeze d) harden

39 The population in Egypt has increased .... more than ninety million recently.

a) in b) to c) at d) for

40 My brother's dream to be a doctor has finally .... true.

a) gone b) walked c) come d) made

41 Its too early to .... any prediction about the match results as only ten minutes passed.

a) do b) devise c) work d) make

42 School should encourage and help the .... of a student's skills.

a) deterioration b) amusement c) entertainment d) development

43 The company had to hire a/an .... at computer software to protect its systems.

a) export b) expert c) coach d) trainee

44 It can be .... to leave the house in which you were born.

a) useful b) playful c) painful d) useless

45 The doctor tried to .... the patient's son that his mother would be fine soon.

a) reassure b) frighten c) fear d) ensure

46 Hossam Hassan is a good coach who knows how to get good .... for his team.

a) experiments b) causes c) cases d) results

47 Many northern Europeans spend their holidays in places with warm .... because theirs are very cold.

a) atmospheres b) degrees c) climates d) deserts

48 The police came to the .... that the criminal was not telling the truth.

a) study b) conclusion c) attention d) experience

49 The .... damage from the volcano took at least two years to repair.

a) accidental b) fictional c) imaginative d) environmental

50 My uncle should be careful about his health since he is ....

a) diabetic b) rheumatic c) chaotic d) diplomatic

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The police was able to catch a terrorist .... which was planning for a terrorist attack.

a) tissue b) crew c) cell d) gene

2 I'm not .... to the idea of changing the factory equipment, but we can't afford this.

a) hostile b) favourable c) friendly d) violent

3 He used a piece of .... to clean his sunglasses.

a) cell b) flesh c) paper d) tissue

4 Within minutes of winning the medal the boxer's name was .... on Twitter.

a) waving b) trending c) flooding d) floating

5 Washington and Beijing are at opposite .... on economic policies.

a) poles b) masts c) bars d) sticks

6 The criminals killed a witness for the .... before the trial last week.

a) judge b) defence c) court d) attack

7 If he doesn't .... his ways, the landlord will ask him to leave.

a) mend b) fix c) manage d) differ

8 This multinational company .... in 50 countries around the world.

a) manages b) inaugurates c) establishes d) operates

9 I like my new job as here is a .... of trust between the people working in this office.

a) weather b) layer c) climate d) group

10 A .... of cheap imports into the country has caused losses to some producers.

a) wave b) flood c) trend d) tornado

Grammar

يجب مراجعة أشكال المستقبل الآتية:

1 will + inf.

1. Quick decisions القرارات السريعة	This shirt is very nice. I'll buy it.
2. Future facts حقائق المستقبل	Tomorrow will be the 2nd of March 2019.
3. Predictions without evidence التنبؤ بدون دليل	Ahmed will win the gold medal in the next Olympics.
4. Offer العرض	I will give you a lift if you want.
5. Request الطلب	Will you help me carry this heavy box?
6. Threats التهديد	I will send you off if you speak loudly again.
7. Warning التحذير	If you don't care, you'll face many problems.
8. With the following verbs, expressions and adverbs مع الأفعال والتعبيرات والأحوال الآتية	think/believe/expect/promise/hope/predict/be sure/be afraid/perhaps/certainly/probably/possibly I hope our team will win the next match.

2 be going to + inf.

1. For plans and decisions للخطط والنوايا والقرارات	I've decided to buy a car so I'm going to save money.
2. Predictions with evidence التنبؤ بدليل (شيء نراه أو نسمعه)	There are no clouds. It is going to be a nice day.
3. Look out! /Be careful! للتحذير من شيء على وشك الحدوث	Look out! The wall is going to fall down.
4. Future ambitions طموحات المستقبل	I'm going to be a good player.

3 Present simple

Timetables/ schedules للجداول والمواعيد المحددة	- The plane to the K.S.A leaves at 7 p.m. tomorrow. - The film starts at 10:30 this evening.



Present continuous

Fixed arrangements الأحداث التى تم الترتيب لها	Ahmed is giving a party next Friday. He has sent all the invitation cards.



Future continuous المستقبل المستمر

Form: التكوين	will be + v-ing	I'll be playing at 7 p.m. tomorrow.
Negative: النفى	won't be + v-ing	I won't be waiting for you at 10 p.m. tomorrow.
Interrogative: الاستفهام	Will + الفاعل + be + v-ing?	Will you be painting your room at this time next week?

Usage الاستخدام

1. For actions which will be in progress at a stated future time.

١- يستخدم للأحداث التى ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد فى المستقبل.

- Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be sleeping at this time.

2. For actions which will definitely happen in the future as a result of a routine or arrangement (instead of Present Continuous).

٢- يستخدم للأحداث التى سوف تحدث بالتحديد فى المستقبل كنتيجة لروتين أو ترتيب (بدلًا من المضارع المستمر).

- I'll be playing golf on Friday.
  (I play golf every Friday - it's part of my routine).
- I'll be meeting Fathy tomorrow.
  (We work in the same office so we will definitely meet).

3. When we ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us.

٣- يستخدم عندما نسأل بأدب عن ترتيبات الأشخاص لنرى ما إذا كانوا يستطيعون فعل شىء لنا.

- Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

4. We use may be + ing to refer to future events or trends which are possible but not certain:

٤- نستخدم may be + v-ing للتعبير عن الأحداث التى من الممكن أن تحدث ولكن لسنا متأكدين منها.

- Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The programme predicts what life .... in 20, 30 or 40 years' time.
   a) will be like b) will be liking c) will have liked d) may be liking
2. We think that fewer people .... with diabetes and cancer in the future.
   a) will have lived b) will be living c) shall live d) should live
3. In 2030, we .... people with diabetes.
   a) help b) will be helped c) helped d) will help
4. Between 2020 and 2030, we .... people with diabetes.
   a) will be helping b) will help c) may help d) will be helped
5. Ali .... a good job when he finishes his education.
   a) may be getting b) will probably be getting
   c) will probably get d) gets
6. Hopefully, I .... medicine at university this time next year.
   a) may study b) 'll be studying c) 'll study d) shall study
7. This time next week, I .... on a beach.
   a) may lie b) will lie c) will be lying d) lie
8. You should do some of your homework today or you .... it all day tomorrow.
   a) will do b) may do c) will have done d) will be doing
9. In two years' time, Imad .... English at university.
   a) will be studying b) will study c) will be studied d) studies
10. In five years' time, Ali will probably .... with his parents.
    a) be lived b) still live c) be still living d) still living

Extra Points

1. هناك أفعال لا تستخدم فى الاستمرار ومنها أفعال الحب والكراهية والرأى والملكية فلا تستخدم مع المستقبل المستمر ولكن إذا تغير معناها يمكن أن تستخدم فى الاستمرار مثل.

- This time next year, I will have had my graduation certificate.

لا يمكن استخدام will be having لأن الفعل يملك لا يستخدم مستمرًا.

- This time tomorrow, I will be having my dinner with my family.

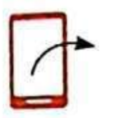
الفعل have هنا ليس بمعنى يملك بل بمعنى يتناول لذلك استخدم فى الاستمرار.

2. لو وجد رابط زمنى نستخدم بعده المضارع البسيط أو المستمر ولا نستخدم المستقبل.

- I'll be studying my lessons while my father is watching the match tomorrow.

3. المستقبل المستمر لا يستخدم فى المبنى للمجهول، هنا نستخدم المستقبل البسيط بدلًا منه.

- In the future, other planets will be lived on.




لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Will you .... the phone for long? I want to make some calls.
   a) be using b) using c) be used d) have used
2. I'll tell Hesham about the party. I .... him at work anyway.
   a) will see b) may see c) will be seeing d) was seeing
3. We .... a drink with Sameh tonight. He has invited us.
   a) have b) are having c) will have d) shall have
4. Don't phone me later than midnight because I .... then.
   a) will sleep b) am going to sleep c) am sleeping d) will be sleeping
5. At this time tomorrow Sameh .... for his exam.
   a) will sit b) will be sitting c) has sat d) may sit
6. This time next week, I .... on the beach.
   a) will be sunbathing b) will have sunbathed
   c) will have been sunbathing d) will be sunbathed
7. If you leave your keys with the hall porter he .... the car around the garage.
   a) is going to take b) takes
   c) will take d) will be taking
8. I've just got a copy of this fantastic book so I .... it tonight.
   a) will read b) shall read c) read d) 'm going to read
9. I .... in the Alps this time next week.
   a) will ski b) will be skiing c) may ski d) was skiing
10. He says he will meet us at the bus stop, but I'm sure he .... to turn up.
    a) will forget b) is forgetting c) is going to forget d) forgets
11. Nader is going on holiday. This time tomorrow, he .... in the sea.
    a) should swim b) may swim c) will swim d) will be swimming
12. In the future, scientists and engineers .... hard to reduce the effects of climate change.
    a) will be worked b) will be working c) will have worked d) work
13. My son isn't happy at his boarding school. I .... him to a day school.
    a) will have sent b) will be sending c) send d) 'm going to send

14 Shop assistant: We have some very nice strawberries.
Customer : All right. I .... a kilo.
a) 'm going to have b) will have c) am having d) will be having

15 This time next week, I .... to London.
a) have travelled b) will travel c) will be travelling d) travel

16 In 2030, people .... medicines which cure diabetes completely.
a) may be taking b) will be taken c) take d) will have taken

17 In the future, we .... new cells from patients to repair parts of their body.
a) use b) may be used c) will be used d) 'll be using

18 I think that I .... on the project for the next 15 to 20 years.
a) will work b) may work c) 'll be working d) will have worked

19 In the future, more people .... their food from areas less affected by climate change.
a) import b) will be importing c) imported d) shall import

20 The population of the world .... to around ten billion by the year 2100.
a) will increase b) will be increasing
c) may be increasing d) increases

21 In the year 2100, the planet we .... on will be almost unrecognisable.
a) will be living b) will have lived c) were living d) will be lived

22 Between now and next Thursday, I .... for an English exam.
a) 'll revise b) 'II be revising c) may revise d) was revising

23 Sayed thinks that his team .... next week's competition.
a) may be winning b) will be won c) will be won d) will win

24 I wonder what I .... this time next year.
a) 'll do b) shall do c) 'll be doing d) do

25 Riham is going on holiday soon. This time next week, she .... in the Mediterranean.
a) will sail b) will be sailing c) sails d) shall sail

26 At 7:30 tomorrow, I .... for the airport.
a) will leave b) may have left c) will be leaving d) won't leave

27 In an hour's time, Warda .... home on the train.
a) will travel b) travels c) travelled d) will be travelling

28 This time next year, Salma .... for her final exam.
a) will revise b) will be revising c) may revise d) revises

29 In 20 years, Khaled .... his own business.
a) will be running b) will run c) runs d) ran

30 Where do you think you .... when you're 50?
a) shall work b) will be worked c) will be working d) work

31 This player .... for a famous team between 2019 and 2023.

a) has been playing b) plays c) will be playing d) will play

32 At 9.30 next Monday, my father .... to London, his plane leaves at 9.15.

a) will be flying b) may be flying c) will fly d) fly

33 At 5 tomorrow I .... the final match.

a) will watch b) will be watching c) would watch d) watching

34 Ayman can't go to the party. He .... all day tomorrow.

a) will have worked b) may work c) will work d) will be working

35 Tomorrow afternoon we're going to watch the match from 7 to 9 p.m. So, at 8 p.m. we .... the match.

a) will watch b) will be watching

c) will have watched d) can't have watched

36 When the men leave the building, the police .... for them.

a) will be waiting b) will be waited c) wait d) are waiting

37 Don't visit me before 5 o'clock. I .... on the garden.

a) will have worked b) will be working c) work d) will work

38 Don't phone me between 7 and 8. I .... dinner then.

a) will have had b) have c) will have d) will be having

39 Between now and 11 o'clock, you .... your exam.

a) will answer b) will have answered

c) will be answering d) answer

40 Hany and Ola .... the house tomorrow morning. They always do it on Friday.

a) clean b) will have cleaned c) will be cleaned d) will be cleaning

41 Perhaps, people .... on the moon in the next decade.

a) will have lived b) may live c) may be living d) will be living

42 This time next week, I .... my driving licence.

a) may have b) will be having c) will have had d) may be having

43 If they prepare well for the trip tomorrow, I .... about it.

a) will excite b) will be excited c) will be exciting d) may be exciting

44 Every candidate believes he .... the next president.

a) shall be b) will have been c) will be being d) will be

45 In ten years' time, I .... and have a steady life.

a) will be married b) will marry c) will be marrying d) am marrying

46 This time tomorrow, Ali .... on the beach.
a) lies b) will have lied c) will be lying d) lies

47 I like these shoes. I .... them.
a) will be buying b) 'll have bought c) am buying d) will buy

48 Using robots instead of humans .... positive and negative effects.
a) will have had b) will have c) is having d) will be having

49 Let's have a drink with Tamer tonight. It's his last night; he .... tomorrow.
a) is leaving b) will have left c) leaves d) will be left

50 I will be cooking while the maid .... the house.
a) will have cleaned b) is cleaning c) will be cleaning d) will clean

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There's no point in .... to persuade her. She won't change her mind.
a) tries b) try c) trying d) to try

2 The first train to Assuit .... at 7:30 every morning.
a) is going to leave b) will be leaving c) will leave d) leaves

3 Be quiet. The baby .... be sleeping in the next room.
a) may b) would c) ought d) should

4 He .... off the light and lay down on his bed.
a) turns b) turned c) was turning d) is turning

5 I'll never forget .... Craig for the first time.
a) meeting b) meet c) to meet d) meets

6 I .... run much faster when I was younger.
a) should b) could c) was able d) would

7 Magid has been .... in magic since he was a child.
a) interest b) interestingly c) interesting d) interested

8 Rahma .... hard for her exams these days.
a) was studying b) has studied c) is studying d) will study

9 You .... do the washing-up. I've already done it.
a) needn't b) don't have c) mustn't d) couldn't

10 .... I borrow your pen for a moment?
a) Would b) Will c) Shall d) May



Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Saying you are worried and reassuring التعبير عن القلق و الطمأنة

Saying you are worried	***Reassuring***
• I found it worrying.	• It'll be fine.
• I worry about	• Relax.
• I'm afraid	• Look on the bright side.
• I'm feeling very nervous.	• There's no point in worrying.
• It really worries me.	
• That doesn't stop me from worrying.	

Writing: The effects of climate change on Egypt and North Africa

- **Choose an environmental problem and describe how it might affect us in the future. Write down your ideas in a short presentation. You should:**
  - Describe the problem and say its effects.
  - Say what people think about the problem.
  - Explain what they think we should do.

Model Essay

Climate change is a serious problem in the world. It affects many aspects of life on the planets. Scientists even say that it threatens our life on earth. Some of the most affected places are the coastal areas which will suffer disastrous effects.

We are worried that it will have serious effects on our country and the region where we live: North Africa. Scientists predict that the weather in summer, which is already hot, will be very hot. This rise of temperature can make some parts in Egypt and North Africa uninhabitable. Therefore, people may be leaving their homes and move to other places. This also may lead to the decrease of food production as a result of droughts. Moreover, it is expected that climate change will cause the ice at the North Pole and the South Pole to melt.

This will certainly lead to the rise of sea levels all over the world. We worry that this too can cause floods in some areas which are near the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. Parts of some cities like Alexandria, Marsa Matrouh, Tripoli in Libya and Casablanca in Morocco could disappear under the water of the sea causing millions of people to die or lose homes.

To conclude, there are serious predictions about the effects of climate change on Egypt and North Africa and it's time we exerted more and more efforts to save our planet and fight this dangerous problem. Governments and individuals should take part in fighting this serious problem and trying to lessen its serious effects.

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. Having a lot of money does not always bring happiness.
2. Ways to help the people with a disability or people with special needs to be useful citizens.

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Learning critical thinking skills helps young people to face the challenges of modern age. It also helps them not to fall prey to misleading groups.
2. Scientists are working hard to discover new techniques to cure fatal diseases. This will lead to helping people suffer less.
3. The development of medical science has added much to people's comfort and health. No one can imagine the future prospects of it.
4. Scientists, thinkers and men of letters, should be honoured for their great efforts. This will help children and young people to follow their examples.
5. Global warming is a serious problem which we should all cooperate to solve. It may cause serious effects and threaten life on earth.
6. Before taking important decisions, one should negotiate their pros and cons. This will certainly lead to good results.

B) Translate into English:

١- تعمل الحكومات على توفير الرعاية الصحية للناس لأن ذلك يؤدى إلى زيادة الإنتاج وتنمية الاقتصاد.
٢- عملت منظمة الصحة العالمية لعقود على توفير التطعيمات اللازمة للقضاء على كثير من الأمراض.
٣- يجب على الطالب أن يلتحق بالكلية التى تناسب قدراته ومواهبه وليست التى تعتمد فقط على الدرجات التى حصل عليها.
٤- تمثل مؤتمرات الشباب فرصة جيدة لالتقاء الشباب بالمسئولين والبحث عن حلول للمشكلات التى تواجههم.
٥- حماية الآثار مسئولية كل مواطن فى مصر وليست مهمة تقوم بها الحكومة وموظفو الآثار فقط.
٦- يسىء الكثيرون استخدام الحرية فالحرية أن تعبر عن رأيك ولا تهمل آراء الاخرين.

Enrich your Vocabulary

cons	عيوب	pros	مزايا
fatal	مميت/ مهلك	prospects	تطلعات/ إمكانيات
honour	يكرم	responsibility	مسئولية
misleading	مضلل	suit	تناسب
misuse	يسيء استخدام	threaten	يهدد
monuments	الآثار	vaccines	التطعيمات
prey	فريسة	World Health Organisation	منظمة الصحة العالمية

Test 3 Based on Unit 11



لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is a disease in which there is too much sugar in the blood.
   a) Amnesia b) Arthritis
   c) Diabetes d) Insomnia
2. After the operation, you .... any sport for a while.
   a) won't be doing b) may do
   c) will do d) will be doing
3. As the Second World War ...., more and more countries became involved.
   a) stopped b) ended
   c) progressed d) flooded
4. Next Friday, the President and the people .... the great victory over the enemy.
   a) shall celebrate b) will be celebrating
   c) celebrates d) may be celebrated
5. We have a lot of work to do, but Fatema .... us.
   a) will be helping b) helping
   c) helped d) may be helped

6 After twenty years abroad, the street where I was born is now .... to me.

a) recognise
b) recognition
c) recognised
d) unrecognisable

7 The employers .... the strikers again tomorrow. This has been arranged.

a) will meet
b) meet
c) are meeting
d) are going to meet

8 Our science teacher told us that nitric acid can dissolve most animal ....

a) issues
b) tissues
c) layers
d) leather

9 I won't have time to meet you next weekend, I'm afraid. I .... the school timetable for next year.

a) will organise
b) will be organising
c) may organise
d) organise

10 The shop assistant told me that long skirts are still on .... this winter.

a) wave
b) fashion
c) flood
d) trend

11 The director's latest movie is in the .... of classic horror movies.

a) habit
b) custom
c) tradition
d) action

12 He's looking forward .... his old school mates again.

a) to see
b) to have seen
c) seeing
d) to seeing

13 I'll try my best to spot you. What .... wearing?

a) will you have
b) will you be
c) will you
d) were you

14 Don't forget your snow pants. It .... by the time you get to school.

a) is snowing
b) will have snowed
c) will snow
d) will be snowing

15 At noon tomorrow, I .... on a beach somewhere.

a) be relaxing
b) 'll relax
c) 'll have relaxed
d) relax

16 Sorry, I can't come to your office at 10 a.m. I .... my daughter to work at that time.

a) will have taken
b) will take
c) will be taking
d) take

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The weather forecast predicts what the temperature and air conditions will be in the near future. There is a wide variety of types of weather. The weather can be sunny or stormy. It can be warm or cool. It also can be rainy, cloudy or windy. Sometimes, weather is severe.

A blizzard, a thunderstorm or a hurricane may happen quickly. When we get information ahead of time, we can prepare for it. Being prepared helps us stay safe.

A meteorologist is a person whose job is to forecast the weather. There are many tools available to help the meteorologist do his job. A common tool for getting an accurate measurement of the temperature is a thermometer. A high temperature probably means plenty of sunshine for everyone.

In rainy weather, a meteorologist uses a rain gauge. A rain gauge gives numerical data about how much rain is falling outdoors. After it rains, you may be able to see a rainbow. A rainbow appears when the sun **comes out** and there is still rain in the air.

Wind brings us weather. It blows clouds from one place to another. It is helpful to know which direction the wind is blowing. A wind vane provides this information. Knowing the wind direction helps a meteorologist know what weather is coming.

Weather forecasts are not always right. As our knowledge about weather gets better, the forecasts become more accurate.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 When we are prepared for the forthcoming blizzard, we will be ....

a) happy
b) safe
c) in danger
d) strong

18 The person whose job is to forecast the weather is called ....

a) psychologist
b) philologist
c) monologist
d) meteorologist

19 When the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air, we can see ....

a) a rainbow
b) a blizzard
c) a thunderstorm
d) a hurricane

20 The other meaning of "**comes out**" is ....

a) hides
b) disappears
c) appears
d) eclipses

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What is a weather forecast?

22 What is your favourite kind of weather? Why?

23 Name two weather tools and tell what they are used for.

24 People studying the weather must have hard and risky jobs. Give evidence.

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

If humans contributed to controlling global warming, this world would be cooler and the high temperatures we currently suffer from would decrease.

26 **Translate into English:**

- قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطبية ومنها أشياء كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمى يصعب الوصول إليه.

27 **Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:**

Having a lot of money does not always bring happiness.



Unit 12

Keeping safe

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for specific information; listening for detail
Grammar	: Reported questions
Reading	: Reading for specific information
Critical thinking	: Being aware of everyday dangers
Functions	: Persuading
Writing	: Writing instructions to help prevent a fire

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

angle (n) زاوية	major (adj) رئيسى
blink (v) (ed) يرمش/ يغمض عينيه ويفتحها بسرعة	moist (adj) رطب
brightness (n) سطوع/ مستوى إضاءة	moisture (n) رطوبة
bright (adj) ساطع/ مضىء	overload (v) (ed) يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)
electrical (adj) كهربى	permanent (adj) دائم
electricity (n) كهرباء	point out (v) (ed) يلفت النظر
fire extinguisher (n) طفاية حريق	position (n) موقع/ وضع/ مكانة
flat (adj) مستوٍ/ مسطح	simple (adj) بسيط
height (n) ارتفاع	socket (n) مقبس الكهرباء/ فيشة
majority (n) أغلبية	unplug (v) (ged) ينزع القابس

Vocabulary On Listening

action (n) فعل/ حركة	head teacher (n) ناظر مدرسة
activity (n) نشاط	helpful (adj) مفيد/ معين
adults (n) راشدون/ بالغون	last (v) (ed) يستمر/ يدوم
avoid (v) (ed) يتجنب/ يتفادى	mainly (adv) أساسًا
back (n) ظهر	move around (v) (d) يتنقل/ يتحرك
basic (adj) أساسى	pain (n) ألم
common (adj) شائع/ معروف	period (n) فترة من الوقت
disappear (v) (ed) يختفى	race (n) سباق
experience (n) (v) (d) خبرة/ تجربة/ يجرب	regular (adj) منتظم
	related (adj) مرتبط
	repetitive strain injury (RSI) إصابة الإجهاد المزمن

rule (n)	قاعدة	stretching (n)	استطالة
screen (n)	شاشة عرض	temporary (adj)	مؤقت
spend (v) spent	يقضى الوقت	unusual (adj)	غير عادى

Vocabulary On Reading

alarm (n)	إنذار	prevent (v) (ed)	يمنع/ يقى
blanket (n)	بطانية	prevention (n)	وقاية
danger (n)	خطر	put out (v)	يطفئ النار
dangerous (adj)	خطير	recommend (v) (ed)	يوصى بـ/ يرشح
equipment (n)	معدات	recommendation (n)	توصية/ ترشيح
injury (n)	إصابة	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل
involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/ يشرك	suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
personal (adj)	شخصى	suggestion (n)	اقتراح
personality (n)	شخصية	turn off (v) (ed)	يغلق/ يطفئ (جهاز)
		work out (v) (ed)	يحل/ يطور/ يدبر

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

author (n)	مؤلف/ أديب	living room (n)	غرفة المعيشة
connect (v) (ed)	يصل/ يتصل	measure (v) (d)	يقيس
connection (n)	اتصال	measurements (n)	مقاسات/ قياسات
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقى	member (n)	عضو/ فرد
exhibition (n)	معرض	middle-aged (adj)	فى منتصف العمر
extinguish (v) (ed)	يطفئ نارًا	nature (n)	الطبيعة
free (adj)	حر/ غير مشغول	natural (adj)	طبيعى
instructions (n)	تعليمات	notice (n) (v) (d)	لافتة/ يلاحظ
let down (v)	يخذل	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع

persuasion (n)	إقناع	sensible (adj)	عاقل/ حكيم
point (n) (v) (ed)	نقطة/ يشير	teen (n)	مراهق
repeated (adj)	مكرر	wire (n)	سلك معدني
safe (adj)	آمن		

Focus on Vocabulary

angle	زاوية	the position from which something is viewed
blink	يرمش/ يغمض العين ويفتحها بسرعة	to shut and open your eyes quickly
brightness	سطوع/ إضاءة	the quality of light given or reflected by an object
electrical	كهربي	using or to do with electricity
fire extinguisher	طفاية حريق	a piece of equipment used for stopping/putting out small fires
flat	مسطح/ مستوٍ	describes something that is level, smooth and even
height	ارتفاع	the measurement from the bottom to the top of an object
majority	أغلبية	most of the people or things in a group
moist	رطب	describes something that is slightly wet, damp or humid
overload	يزيد الحمل	put too much electricity through something

permanent	دائم	describes something that is intended to last or continue forever
point out	يلفت النظر	tell someone something
position	موقع / مكانة	the location of an object
simple	بسيط	describes something that is easy to do or easy to understand
socket	مقبس الكهرباء	a place in a wall where you can connect equipment to the supply of electricity
unplug	ينزع القابس	to disconnect a piece of electrical equipment by taking its plug out of a socket

Expressions & Idioms

according to	طبقًا لـ	have a break	يأخذ راحة
at least	على الأقل	in use	قيد الاستخدام
catch a train	يلحق بالقطار	make ... worse	يجعل الأمر أسوء
do well	يجيد	revise for the test	يراجع للامتحان
follow ... advice	يتبع النصيحة	take exams	يمتحن

Phrases & Prepositions

cause of	سبب لـ	let down	يخذل
give back	يعيد	related to	مرتبط بـ
good at	جيد فى	talk to	يتحدث إلى
increase in	زيادة فى	think of	يفكر فى
lead to	يؤدى إلى		

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
brightness	سطوع/ مستوى إضاءة	illumination	darkness ظلام
flat	مستوٍ/ مسطح	even	rough غير مستوٍ
majority	أغلبية	bulk	minority أقلية
moist	رطب	damp	dry جاف
permanent	دائم	long-lasting	temporary مؤقت
simple	بسيط	plain	complicated معقد
unplug	ينزع القابس	switch off/ disconnect	turn on/ connect/ plug in يوصل/ يشغل
basic	أساسى	main	secondary ثانوى
personal	شخصى	peculiar/ private/ individual	public/ general عام

Notes on Vocabulary

▸ electrical | electric | electrician

electrical — كهربى (مرتبط بالكهرباء/ يعمل فى مجال الكهرباء)

- The fire was caused by an electrical fault.
- My father works for a company producing electrical equipment.

electric — كهربى (يعمل أو ينتج بالكهرباء)

- All the rooms in this youth hostel have an electric heater.
- The man was badly injured by an electric shock.

electrician — عامل/ فنى كهرباء

- We asked for an electrician to repair the washing machine.

▸ moist | humid

moist — رطب/ مبلل بالماء

- You should water the plants regularly to keep the soil moist.

humid — رطب الطقس (ملىء ببخار الماء)

- The weather had become very humid.

load unload overload download upload

load — يحمل (بضائع/ برامج)
- The farmers were loading some vegetables into the cars.
- This program takes a while to load.

unload — يفرغ حمولة
- The driver unloaded some boxes from the back of the truck.

overload — يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)
- Be careful not to overload the washing machine.
- The bus was overloaded with tourists and their luggage.

download — يحمّل ملفات من الإنترنت
- There are some games that can be downloaded free from the internet.

upload — يرفع إلى الإنترنت
- It might take 10 minutes to upload this video to the website.

suggest

suggest — يقترح
- verb + ing
- فاعل + should + المصدر
- فاعل + المصدر

- He suggested going to the countryside to spend the weekend.
- I suggest we should take a break and finish this later.
- I suggest that he wait for us near the cinema.

لاحظ استخدام الفعل فى المصدر فى الغالب حتى إذا كان الفاعل مفردًا غائبًا (he - she).

Phrasal verbs with (come)

عند إضافة حروف الجر إلى بعض الأفعال يتغير معناها وتعطى معانى مختلفة عن الفعل الأصلى ومن هذه الأفعال:

come up with	يتوصل إلى/ يبتكر فكرة	come out	يصدر (كتاب/ جريدة / فيلم)
come on	أسرع/ هيا	come round	يعود إلى وعيه

- Omar came up with a good suggestion for what to get Nabil as a birthday present.
- A new novel I want to read comes out next week.
- The best authors are always very good at coming up with new ideas.
- Do you know when the new James Bond film is coming out?
- Mona came round slowly after the accident, but she's fine now.
- My brother has come up with some useful suggestions to help me revise for my exams.
- Come on! We're going to be late.
- Come on! You must lend me the money I need.

sensible **sensitive**

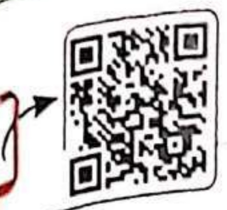
sensible عقلاني / حكيم
- The teacher's advice about revising regularly is very sensible.

sensitive حساس (سريع التأثر / متفهم لمشاعر الآخرين)
- My sister is very sensitive about her weight.
- My experience made me very sensitive to the suffering of others.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our .... bill for July was nearly 300 pounds.
   a) electronic b) electric
   c) electrical d) electrician
2. I suggest that Mohamed .... revising a week before the exam.
   a) start b) to start
   c) started d) starting
3. Software updates can be .... from the company's website.
   a) loaded b) overloaded
   c) uploaded d) downloaded
4. I have to be very careful with what I say because my friend is so ....
   a) sensible b) sensing
   c) sensitive d) sensational
5. Cairo is usually very hot and .... in the summer.
   a) moist b) humid
   c) wet d) warm
6. You might feel a little sick when you come .... from the anaesthetic.
   a) in b) out
   c) up d) round
7. How long will it take to .... this sand onto the lorry?
   a) load b) overload
   c) download d) upload
8. You'll need a qualified .... to rewire your house.
   a) electronic b) electric
   c) electrical d) electrician



Listening Text

Good morning. I want to thank your head teacher for inviting me to speak to you today about using computers without damaging your health. So, I'm here to answer all the questions that you have sent me over the last week.

We all need computers, don't we? When your head asked me to come here, I wanted to know where the school was. So, I looked on my computer to find it. We all use computers as part of our everyday life, at home, at school and at work. Computers are great, but it's important to use them in the right way, and that is what I want to talk about today.

Many of you asked me how long people spent on a computer each day. Well, it is not unusual for adults and children to be on their computers for six or seven hours every day, and this increase in computer use has brought with it problems related to different parts of our bodies: mainly our eyes, backs and arms.

(1) دائم

(2) موقع/ مكانة

(3) ارتفاع

(4) زاوية

(5) مستوٍ

(6) يرمش

One of you said that you had pain in your arms after using a computer. You asked me how long the pain would last. Most of the pain we feel after using our computers are temporary and disappear after a rest or a change of activity.

The most common computer-related problems are headaches and pain in our arms, back and neck. The most serious of these is repetitive strain injury, or RSI, which can lead to permanent(1) damage. Another student wanted to know why he was getting RSI. Problems like this are usually caused by sitting in an unnatural position(2) for long periods of time or having your chair in the wrong position. Perhaps the most important way of preventing these problems is to take regular breaks from your computer: at least five minutes every hour. During these breaks, you should move around or do stretching exercises. You should also make sure your desk or table is the right height(3) and the computer screen at the correct angle(4). You will also find it helpful to have your feet flat(5) on the floor.

Some of you asked me what you could do to prevent damage to your eyes. If you are a regular computer user, you should have your eyes tested once every two years. To avoid eye problems while you are working, blink(6) regularly and focus on things which are further away than the computer screen. Other actions that you can take include

keeping the air in the room moist[7], for example by using plants or a glass of water. This will stop your eyes from becoming dry. Also change the brightness[8] of your screen from time to time and, of course, keep your screen clean.

(7) رطب
(8) سطوع/ مستوى إضاءة

These are some of the basic rules for avoiding health problems related to computer use. Follow these and you should not experience serious problems.



Safety at home



One of the most common causes of personal injury is an accident at home, and the two groups most in danger from these injuries are children under five and adults over seventy.

Recently, a group of people were asked where most accidents took place at home. The majority[1] correctly said the kitchen, because this is where most house fires begin. The bathroom is also a danger area, because this is where many older people fall and where some accidents involving electrical[2] equipment happen.

When we asked a safety expert what we could do to prevent accidents at home, he came up with some simple[3] but useful ideas. He pointed out[4], for example, that we should not leave food cooking in the kitchen. He also recommended a number of other simple things we could do, including turning off and unplugging[5] electrical equipment when it was not in use, and not overloading[6] electrical sockets[7]. He also said that all homes should have smoke alarms.

Finally, we asked him what we should do if a fire started at home. He suggested that all homes should have at least one fire extinguisher[8] and that families should work out a fire escape plan in case the worst happened. He also reminded us that throwing water on a fire, for example, on a fire caused by electrical equipment, does not always put it out and can make the situation worse. In these cases, a fire blanket is recommended.

If everyone follows this simple advice, the number of serious injuries caused by accidents at home can be reduced.

(1) أغلبية
(2) كهربى
(3) بسيط
(4) يلفت النظر
(5) ينزع القابس
(6) يزيد الحمل
(7) قابس الكهرباء/ فيشة
(8) طفاية حريق

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 I want to thank your head teacher for inviting me to speak to you today about using computers without damaging your health.

- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد حروف الجر كما يمكن استخدام اسم أو ضمير.

2 .... you have sent me over the last week.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام مع (over the last week) أما (last week) فيستخدم معها زمن الماضي البسيط.

3 .... he came up with some simple but useful ideas.

- لاحظ استخدام (but) كحرف جر وليس كأداة ربط.

4 .... families should work out a fire escape plan in case the worst happened.

- تستخدم (in case) بمعنى (تحسبًا لـ) ويتبعها جملة كاملة أما (in case of) فمعناها (فى حالة) ويتبعها اسم أو (verb + ing).

5 .... throwing water on a fire, for example, on a fire caused by electrical equipment, does not always put it out.

- عند استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) كفاعل فإنه يعامل معاملة المفرد لذلك استخدم الفعل (does not).

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A/An .... is the space between two straight lines or surfaces that join each other, measured in degrees.
a) direction b) angle c) degree d) angel

2 The tourist village consists of low buildings with .... roofs.
a) deep b) muddy c) flat d) cloudy

3 The accident has caused the woman .... damage to her eyesight. She won't be able to see again.
a) permanent b) temporary c) extinct d) weak

4 My father asked me to adjust the .... of the TV as it looks a bit dark.
a) thickness b) brightness c) cleanliness d) slowness

5 You should make sure the soil is .... before planting the seeds.
a) rainy b) humid c) watery d) moist

6 Our science teacher told us that sunflowers can grow to a .... of 15 feet.
a) weight b) height c) post d) length

7 It was difficult to determine the .... of the plane which fell in the ocean.

a) position b) direction c) popularity d) astounding

8 A car passed near our car and its strong car flashlight made me ....

a) blind b) blank c) blink d) wake

9 A .... is the place in a wall where you can connect electrical equipment to the supply of electricity.

a) socket b) pocket c) rocket d) switch

10 The assistant at the gallery pointed .... that not one of these paintings is original.

a) out b) up c) in d) down

11 You should always .... the TV before you go to bed.

a) close b) turn on c) unplug d) switch on

12 I think that modern mobile phones are very .... to use. Even children use them easily.

a) complex b) simple c) complicated d) tricky

13 It's very dangerous to .... this socket as its wires are not strong.

a) overload b) unload c) upload d) download

14 The .... of students in the cooking courses are girls, only two boys are there.

a) minority b) priority c) seniority d) majority

15 A .... is a metal container with water or chemicals in it, used for stopping small fires.

a) heater b) fire extinguisher c) fridge d) conditioner

16 It took the patient two hours to come .... after the operation.

a) on b) out c) up with d) round

17 To solve our problem, my brother came .... a good idea that worked well.

a) on b) out c) up with d) round

18 My brother dreams of becoming an ....engineer.

a) electrical b) electric c) electronic d) electron

19 The second season of my favourite TV show comes .... out this week.

a) on b) out c) up with d) round

20 Road safety is taught to young children to .... road accidents.

a) keep b) have c) avoid d) suffer

21 You should start any talk by giving the .... facts.

a) fictional b) extra c) additional d) basic

22 The hot weather .... for the whole month of July.

a) listed b) lasted c) stayed d) faded

23 Office workers can suffer from repetitive strain .... because of the uncomfortable positions.

a) accident b) injury c) damage d) disease

24 It's easy to change the text on computer .... before printing it.

a) screen b) mouse c) keyboard d) software

25 If you are an office worker, you must keep doing .... exercises.

a) scratching b) attaching c) extinguishing d) stretching

26 I've got a .... office job, only for the summer holiday.

a) permanent b) stable c) temporary d) offensive

27 All the .... of the new factory has been carefully tested.

a) tools b) equipment c) sets d) gadgets

28 Running your own business usually .... working long hours.

a) involves b) consists c) rewards d) punishes

29 The new factory near the river .... pollution in the area worse.

a) improves b) puts c) makes d) proves

30 A fire or smoke .... is necessary in any modern building or house.

a) disarm b) army c) arm d) alarm

31 It took firefighters three hours to .... the fire out.

a) give b) cut c) put d) make

32 The report .... different ways in which the service could be improved.

a) suggested b) advised c) excluded d) prevented

33 The Nile TV Channel made a new .... about the New Egyptian Museum.

a) adventure b) documentary c) fiction d) audio

34 Mr Kareem will remain the director of the company for three years at ....

a) least b) last c) list d) lessen

35 The man in charge asked us to .... all cigarettes in lifts.

a) entertain b) end c) start d) extinguish

36 We should .... the wall before we buy new shelves.

a) design b) afford c) measure d) destroy

37 My grandfather suffers from memory loss related .... his age.

a) in b) to c) about d) at

38 The secretary was asked to put up a .... about the meeting of the staff.

a) notice b) dictionary c) dialogue d) device

39 Electrical .... are made of copper which conducts electricity well.
a) ropes b) walls c) wires d) strings

40 Most girls don't feel .... walking down the street at night alone.
a) dangerous b) safe c) affected d) bad

41 Our elders usually help us to take .... decisions about our life.
a) divided b) doubtful c) sensitive d) sensible

42 We should teach our children to .... their elders' advice at all times.
a) disobey b) ignore c) neglect d) follow

43 The receptionist asked the guest for his .... details.
a) secret b) ambiguous c) personal d) public

44 The Art Museum is having a/an .... of old photographs for three days.
a) fair b) exhibition c) tournament d) incident

45 She was worried that she'd arrive too late to .... her train.
a) catch b) miss c) make d) book

46 It took a lot of .... to get dad to agree to the idea of going out.
a) prevention b) protection c) interval d) persuasion

47 I'm relying on your help – please don't .... me down.
a) let b) leave c) allow d) permit

48 Health education in the local population is important to the ....of diseases.
a) protection b) prevention c) healing d) devising

49 The young runner is competing in his first ....of the Olympics this year.
a) race b) match c) war d) battle

50 Nour couldn't find any .... job. She has changed a lot of jobs.
a) gradual b) vain c) regular d) secret

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

1 You should look at every .... of the situation before taking a decision.
a) corner b) angle c) group d) angel

2 The .... of the Egyptian students who took part in the competition was clear and they won it.
a) sorrow b) dishonesty c) brightness d) gloom

3 I asked my father to let me go out with my friends, but I received a .... refusal.
a) flat b) round c) rough d) vague

4 The violent dog nearly pulled the cat's arm out of its ....
a) pocket b) nest c) location d) socket

5 The father's behaviour proves that he has an opposing .... against the misuse of modern technology.

a) scene b) position c) sight d) site

6 January is the .... of the tourist season in Sharm El-Sheikh.

a) weight b) length c) height d) altitude

7 Most parents are strongly .... the new educational system.

a) growing b) backing c) packing d) harvesting

8 I don't want to .... you, but I can't find the car key.

a) warn b) oppose c) object d) alarm

9 People today suffer from information .... of all the mass media around them.

a) upload b) overload c) download d) unload

10 The word "damp" is similar in meaning to the word ....

a) moist b) dry c) stormy d) wasting

Grammar

Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

Reported Questions الأسئلة غير المباشرة

عند تحويل السؤال من الكلام المباشر إلى غير المباشر نتبع الخطوات التالية:

١ - يحول فعل القول كالآتى :

Direct	Indirect	Indirect
say/say to	ask	هناك أفعال أخرى غير ask/asked منها: wanted to know/inquired/didn't know/had no idea/ wondered (لا يتبعها مفعول) Can (Could) you tell me .....?
says/says to	asks	
said/said to	asked	

٢ - تحذف علامتا التنصيص وتربط الجملة بـنفس كلمة الاستفهام إذا كان هناك wh- word أو if/whether إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص مثل (have – has – is – can – will, etc.).

٣ - ويحول السؤال بعد الربط إلى جملة خبرية أى أن الفاعل يسبق الفعل ولا يكون هناك فعل مساعد بعد أداة الربط.

٤ - تستبدل علامة الاستفهام بنقطة.

٥ - تحول الضمائر حسب المعنى.

٦ - تحول الأزمنة والظروف وضمائر الإشارة كما سبق فى الجملة الخبرية. (راجع الوحدة ٩).

• I said to him, "What do you think of my new suit?"

(Direct)

ask/want to know +	wh./if +	subject +	verb +	باقى الجملة	(.)
I asked him	**what**	**he**	**thought**	**of my new suit**	**.**

(Indirect)

١- بعد ask/asked يمكن أن يأتى مفعول أو لا يأتى ولكن بعد want (ed) to know والكلمات الباقية لا يأتى مفعول.

Direct : She said to him, "What's your favourite food?"

Indirect : She asked him what his favourite food was.

Direct : She said to me, "What do you want?"

Indirect : She asked me what I wanted.

Direct : They said to her, "Do you know Ashraf?"

Indirect : They asked her if/whether she knew Ashraf.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He wanted to know whether .... him.
   a) shall I help b) can I help c) I could help d) I can help
2. He asked me what time ....
   a) is it b) it is c) it has been d) it was
3. She asked me why I .... her the truth the day before.
   a) didn't tell b) hadn't told c) wasn't telling d) haven't told
4. I asked Mr Osama why he .... to spend the summer holiday in Matrouh.
   a) wanted b) wants c) has wanted d) does he want
5. I .... her if I could use her new camera.
   a) wondered b) told c) asked d) inquired
6. My boss wanted to know what secondary school I .... to when I was a student.
   a) would go b) have gone c) had gone d) can go
7. They asked my sister if she .... experience working with children.
   a) has had b) could have c) has d) had
8. I inquired if Ali .... any sports.
   a) played b) plays c) is playing d) will play
9. I asked him what his favourite film ....
   a) will be b) was c) is d) was being
10. She wanted to know how long it .... me to go to the market.
    a) takes b) has taken c) took d) will take

Extra Points

❶ إذا بدأ السـؤال المحول بـــ I wonder/I ask/I want to know/I inquire فلا نحول الأزمنة بعد الربط للدرجة الأقل.

I ask/I wonder why he walked to school yesterday and left his car.

❷ إذا بدأ السؤال المحول بـ Can/Could you tell me فهو مضارع ونضع علامة استفهام آخر السؤال المحول فلا تحول الزمن إلى الدرجة الأقل عند الربط.

- Can/Could you tell me what your name is?
- Do you know where the post office is?

❸ يجب ملاحظة أن الحقائق والأسئلة المقولة حالًا لا يحول الزمن بعدها إلى الدرجة الأقل.

- He asked just now if I speak English fluently.

❹ لاحظ الاستفهام بعد جملة خبرية مثل:

- He said, "I have finished my homework. Have you finished yours?"
- He said that he had finished his homework and asked if I had finished mine.

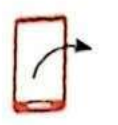
❺ يمكن وضع .to + inf بعد where/what/who/whether عندما يكون الفاعل قبل فعل القول هو نفس الفاعل الذى قبل الفعل المصدر داخل علامتى التنصيص.

- He asked me, "Where can I put it?"
- He asked me where he could put it. Or He asked me where to put it.

❻ إذا وجد or not آخر الجملة فيمكن اسـتخدام if/whether أما إذا وجد or not فى وسـط الجملة فنستخدم whether فقط.

- I wanted to know if/whether the teacher had given us a lot of homework or not.
- I wanted to know whether or not the teacher had given us a lot of homework.






لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He asked me where he .... the vase.
a) puts b) could put c) can put d) does put

2 Farouk asked Osman why .... late.
a) was he b) is he c) he was d) are you

3 The teacher said, "Where ...., Hazem?"
a) your books are b) your books were c) your book is d) is your book

4 Karim .... Nour if there was sugar in the cup.
a) asked b) inquired c) wondered d) told

5 Samy asked Ali where .... that precious stone.
a) did he find b) he had found c) he finds d) had he found

6 They wanted to know .... music.
a) did I play b) do I play c) that I play d) if I played

7 She asked me where I .... then.
a) am staying b) was staying c) did stay d) stay

8 The boss asked me if I .... willing to stay after the limited working hours.
a) will be b) would be c) am d) could be

9 The interviewer asked the professor .... he had worked at any foreign universities.
a) that b) whatever c) whether d) unless

10 Can you kindly tell me where .... at present time?
a) was the manager b) will the manager be
c) is the manager d) the manager is

11 Alladin asked the magician .... he had done to deserve so severe punishment.
a) what b) whether c) that d) if

12 He asked me if I .... that problem.
a) can solve b) will solve c) could solve d) has solved

13 He .... when she had intended to buy a car of her own.
a) told b) asks c) said d) inquired



14 I asked her .... she did not know the way home.
a) whether b) weather c) what d) that

15 The judge finally asked whether I .... anything to say on behalf of the accused.
a) have b) was having c) had d) will have

16 The little girl asked which way she ....
a) should go b) will go c) has gone d) may go

17 I wonder what I .... this time next week.
a) will be doing b) would be doing c) had done d) did

18 He wanted to know how old I .... on my next birthday.
a) will be b) can be c) would be d) could be

19 I asked the tourists if they .... their visit to Egypt.
a) had been enjoying b) would enjoy c) enjoy d) had enjoyed

20 My teacher asked me if I .... computer games.
a) liked b) likes c) will like d) was liking

21 I asked him what he .... the day before.
a) did b) is doing c) had been doing d) has been doing

22 I asked Ali when ....
a) is his birthday.
b) his birthday was.
c) his birthday is?
d) his birthday has been.

23 Your head teacher .... me if I could come here.
a) asked b) told c) wondered d) inquired

24 Riham asked Hanaa who she .... invite to her birthday party.
a) is going to b) should c) shall d) can

25 Warda wanted to know if Randa .... Mona's best friend.
a) was b) is c) has been d) was being

26 Reem's mother asked her when .... home from the shops.
a) was she b) she would be c) she has been d) would she be

27 Warda asked Sara if .... the bus to school.
a) she takes b) she will take c) did she take d) she took

28 Tarek wanted to know who Mazin .... football with.
a) has been playing b) is playing c) had been playing d) can play

29 Zeinab's parents wanted to know what their daughter .... at school that day.
a) has done b) is doing c) had done d) can do

30 Nasser wanted to know where Khaled .... his holiday.
a) had spent b) has spent c) is spending d) can spend

31 Hamid's mother asked him what he .... that evening.
a) is doing b) has done c) will do d) was doing

32 Soha asked her mother when she .... her to do the shopping.
a) wants b) wanted c) has wanted d) is wanting

33 Samy wanted to know how many students .... in the class.
a) are there b) were there c) there are d) there were

34 My wife wondered whether I .... the children to school that day.
a) take b) can take c) would take d) will take

35 I asked the chemistry teacher why he ....the liquids.
a) is mixing b) was mixing c) has been mixing d) mixes

36 He asked me where I .... my holiday the year before.
a) had spent b) did spend c) spent d) have spent

37 My friend Manar asked me what .... at the weekend.
a) did I do b) had I done c) I had done d) have I done

38 The students asked the teacher what they .... to help stop global warming.
a) do b) had done c) did d) could do

39 My friend asked me .... the new film.
a) whether have I seen b) if had I seen c) whether I had seen d) if had seen I

40 Mahmoud's mother asked him where .... three hours before.
a) he had been b) had he been c) was he d) he was

41 The manager asked the secretary who .... him that morning.
a) he had called b) had called c) he called d) calls

42 Do you know what ....
a) does this word mean? b) this word means?
c) this word means. d) this word meant?

43 The teacher asked us how many countries .... in Africa.
a) there were b) there would be c) there are d) are there

44 He asked her if she could help him, but she ....
a) said "No" b) wondered c) said "Yes" d) refused

45 He wondered whether .... them or not.
a) should he invite b) he shall invite c) to invite d) he will invite

46 She asked me what I .... to know then.
a) was wanting b) wanted c) had been wanting d) would want

47 Could you tell me what time the concert .... this evening?
a) would started b) started c) will start d) could start

48 Ramy asked himself where he .... his car keys.
a) would put b) put c) puts d) had put

49 I don't know who .... the Eiffel Tower.
a) built b) builds c) had built d) would build

50 He told me .... he had enough money, he'd buy a car.
a) whether b) if c) that d) what

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You .... drive carefully. The roads are wet.
a) had rather b) would rather c) had better d) would better

2 He looks .... Maybe something wrong has happened to him.
a) to be sadly b) sad c) sadly d) sadness

3 We donated some money to a charity that helps .... homeless.
a) A b) an c) no article d) the

4 I .... that film four times already.
a) see b) have seen c) have been seeing d) saw

5 I .... come to the cinema yesterday because I had so much homework to do.
a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) couldn't d) may not

6 Bill read an interesting .... of news in the paper.
a) piece b) slice c) packet d) block

7 I'd rather he .... me to my face rather than behind my back.
a) to criticise b) has criticised c) criticising d) criticised

8 **A:** Would you like to have cake or ice cream? **B:** .... you want.
a) Something b) Whatever c) Everything d) However

9 Maha .... to the shop to get some bread. She should be back soon.
a) has been b) was gone c) has gone d) was

10 It would have been better if you .... her the truth.
a) had told b) told c) are telling d) tell

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل برجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Persuading someone

إقناع شخص ما

- Surely the most sensible thing would be for just one of us to look.
- I really think you'd be better at looking than me.
- Go on, Hazem.
- Just this once, please!
- You're not going to let me down, are you?
- Come on! It's a great film, you'll love it.

Writing

A notice that could be put on the wall of a kitchen to remind people of the dangers of fire

Remember

- Many kitchen fires happen when people are not paying attention or they leave things cooking.
- The kitchen is a dangerous place for children, so they shouldn't be left alone there.
- Keep the oven and cooker clean - built-up fat and bits of food can start a fire.

Dealing with a fire

- **IF** a pan catches fire in your kitchen, don't move it because it will be very hot.
- **TURN** off the heat if it's safe to do so - don't lean over the pan to reach the controls.
- **DON'T** use a fire extinguisher on a pan of oil because the force of the extinguisher can spread the fire.
- **NEVER** use water on chip pan fires as this will cause a fireball, get everyone out and close the kitchen door.
- **IF** an electrical appliance catches fire, don't throw water on it.
- **IF** it is safe to do so, you may be able to put out the fire immediately by:
  - pulling the appliance's plug out
  - switching off the power at the fuse box
- **IF** the fire doesn't go out, get out of the house, stay out and call the fire department.

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. How we can make schools a safe place for students.
2. The role of women in developing societies.

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Traffic police insist that all cars should have a valid fire extinguisher to have a license. It is an important rule that ensures safety.
2. Tolerance is the willingness to accept behaviour and beliefs that are different from your own. Thus, we all can share peace and mutual understanding.
3. Egypt will never forget its sons who work hard to build it or those who devote their lives to it. Their efforts offer us comfort and prosperity.
4. Rules and laws are made to govern people's social behaviour. They also aim at reducing harms and disorders.
5. Egypt is famous for its ancient monuments that attract millions of tourists. Thus, we should make good use of them to develop this important industry.
6. The Project of the New Capital is a massive project which will move Egypt to new horizons. It also created a great number of jobs.

B) Translate into English:

١- يتعرض الناس فى مصر للحوادث بسبب إهمالهم لقواعد السلامة التى وضعت لحمايتهم من الحوادث.
٢- الزيادة السكانية أحد أهم معوقات التنمية والتقدم فى كثير من بلاد العالم وخاصة الدول النامية.
٣- تتطلع شعوب العالم إلى السلام والاستقرار اللذين تهددهما النزاعات التى تسود أجزاء كثيرة من العالم وأهمها منطقة الشرق الأوسط.
٤- كل عام يفقد الملايين من الناس أرواحهم أثناء محاولاتهم عبور البحر المتوسط للهجرة إلى أوروبا آملين فى حياة أفضل.
٥- يختلف احتفال الناس بالمناسبات المختلفة باختلاف ثقافتهم وعاداتهم وطرق تفكيرهم.
٦- يجب أن تقوم المؤسسات الكبرى بالاستثمار فى البحث العلمى لمساعدة الحكومة على تطويره واستفادة المجتمع من نتائجه.

Enrich your Vocabulary

culture	ثقافة	investment	الاستثمار
developing countries	الدول النامية	mutual	متبادل
devote	يكرس	obstacles	معوقات
disputes	النزاعات	occasions	مناسبات
ensure	يضمن	over population	الزيادة السكانية
horizons	آفاق	tolerance	التسامح
immigration	الهجرة	valid	صالح
industry	الصناعة	willingness	الاستعداد
institutions	المؤسسات		



Test 4 Based on Unit 12

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We use a .... for stopping small fires. So, it is necessary in a kitchen.
a) heater b) fire extinguisher c) fridge d) conditioner

2 Mohammed asked if he .... Tamer's pen.
a) can borrow b) has borrowed c) borrowed d) could borrow

3 Experts advise every computer user to have his/her feet .... on the floor.
a) high b) muddy c) flat d) cloudy

4 Modern television can automatically adjust the .... of the screen.
a) brightness b) thickness c) cleanliness d) slowness

5 Marawan wanted to know what I .... of the new film.
a) thought b) think c) was thinking d) have thought

6 Old people can suffer back .... because of any wrong position.
a) injury b) accident c) damage d) disease

7 Mum asked who .... some more yoghurt ice cream.
a) wanted b) wants c) has wanted d) was wanting

8 The boss asked the workers if they .... enough time to finish their work.
a) have b) have had c) were having d) had had

9 Osama wants to know if Ahmed .... the next group leader.
a) was going to be b) is going to be c) was d) has been

10 When I told her about the new price of the new mobile, she didn't even ....
a) shout b) blink c) hurry d) cry

11 Michael became a partner in the family company on reaching the age of ....
a) childhood b) teenage c) majority d) minority

12 I'm really unlucky, ...?
a) isn't I b) don't I c) doesn't I? d) aren't I

13 The man .... me what time it was.
a) said b) told c) asked to d) wondered

14 He wondered .... to invite Kareem to the party or not.
a) where b) if c) how d) whether

15 He asked .... "What can I do?"
a) he b) himself c) his d) she

16 She asked him if he .... another piece of cake and he accepted.
a) would like b) likes c) liked d) was liking

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Imagine how life could be on earth without modern technology. Imagine how you could do your daily life routine without home appliances and the internet. Some people argue that it is a double-edged weapon.

In today's modern society, the internet is a very educational and productive tool. In order to become knowledgeable and stay well connected. Without technology some individuals couldn't function throughout their day. Many people use it for business purposes while others use technology in order to communicate on social networking sites such as Twitter or Facebook. Despite the beneficial users, predators often abuse its powers. This tool puts consumers at risk for identity theft through scamming and even hacking.

Cyber-crime is any illegal activity committed on the internet that uses a computer as its primary means of theft. Through identity theft, a predator without someone's knowledge acquires data and uses it to commit fraud. It is often difficult to catch cyber criminals because the internet makes it easier for people to do things from any location on the globe. Predators use methods such as spam advertisements and even phony programmes that have viruses.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main idea of the passage is ....
a) the internet is a very educational and productive tool
b) the internet and cyber-crimes
c) the internet "Advantages and disadvantages"
d) the internet as a means of communication

18 According to the passage, people use the internet for ....
a) business b) communication
c) scamming and hacking d) all of these

19 The underlined word "predators" means ....
a) hackers b) hatchers
c) customers d) traders

20 The best sentence that summarises the passage is ....
a) Spam advertisements and phony programmes are useful
b) Don't use the internet ever again
c) We can't protect ourselves from cyber criminals
d) We can't do without the internet but we should be careful when using it

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Technology isn't going to stand still. Give two reasons.

22 Mention two ways to show how we could protect our data from predators.

23 How can we overcome the abuse of the internet?

24 How can you imagine your life without the internet?

25 Translate into Arabic:

Young people should appreciate their elders' sensible advice and consult. They are the outcome of their experience in life.

26 Translate into English:

تؤدى النزاعات والحروب إلى آثار نفسية كثيرة على الأطفال من أهمها فقدان الشعور بالأمان والخوف الدائم من المستقبل.

27 Write an e-mail of about 180 words:

To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in United Arab Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with your family. Your name is Adel.





Unit 13

Rider Haggard: *King Solomon's Mines*

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for gist and for detail; guessing the meanings of unknown words
Grammar	: Prepositions after nouns, verbs and adjectives
Reading	: Reading to check what you know and for specific information
Critical thinking	: Understanding why people's home countries are important to them
Functions	: Asking for and agreeing to help people
Writing	: Writing an email asking for help

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

adviser (n)	مستشار/ ناصح
advice (n)	نصيحة
advisable (adj)	من المفضل(المنصوح)
almost (adv)	تقريبًا
army (n)	جيش
battle (n)	معركة
bestseller (n)	الأكثر مبيعا
eventually (adv)	فى النهاية
force (n) (v) (d)	قوة/ يجبر
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
fortunate (adj)	محظوظ
go missing (v)	يضل الطريق
go on (v)	يستمر
keen on (adj)	حريص على
oasis (n)	واحة
oases (n)	واحات
oppose (v) (d)	يعارض
opposing (adj)	معارض
opposition (n)	معارضة
reform (n) (v) (ed)	إصلاح/ يصلح
strange (adj)	غريب
trap (v) (ped)	يحتجز
trapped (adj)	مُحتَجز

Vocabulary On Listening

adventure (n)	مغامرة
agriculture (n)	الزراعة
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة
ancient (adj)	قديم
apply for (v) (y ied)	يتقدم لـ
civilisation (n)	حضارة
diamond (n)	ماس
explorer (n)	مستكشف
explore (v) (d)	يستكشف
exploration (n)	استكشاف
government (n)	حكومة
lawyer (n)	محامٍ
mine (n)	منجم
poet (n)	شاعر
poetry (n)	شِعر
poem (n)	قصيدة
queen (n)	ملكة
take place (v)	يحدث

Vocabulary On Reading

adventurer (n)	مغامر
attack (n) (v) (ed)	هجوم/ يهاجم
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف/ يسلك
behaviour (n)	سلوك/ تصرف
capture (v) (d)	يأسر/ يستولى على
criminal (n) (adj)	مجرم/ إجرامى
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ
escape (v) (d)	يهرب
frightened (adj)	مرعوب
hunter (n)	صياد
hunting (n)	الصيد
powerful (adj)	قوى/ ذو نفوذ
servant (n)	خادم
soldier (n)	جندى
thirst (n)	العطش
treasure (n)	كنز
valley (n)	وادٍ
violent (adj)	عنيف
violence (n)	عنف

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

charitable (adj)	خيرى
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع
developed (adj)	متطور
economy (n)	اقتصاد
educational (adj)	تعليمى
effective (adj)	فعال
fair (adj)	عادل
gift (n)	هدية
musician (n)	موسيقار
organisation (n)	مؤسسة/ منظمة
popularity (n)	شهرة/ شعبية
position (n)	موقع/ مكانة
relationship (n)	علاقة
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض
system (n)	نظام
tolerant (adj)	متسامح
tolerance (n)	تسامح
wonder (v) (ed)	يتساءل

Focus on Vocabulary

adviser	مستشار	▸ someone whose job is to give advice about a subject
almost	تقريبًا	▸ nearly but not completely
army	جيش	▸ a large organisation of soldiers
battle	معركة	▸ a violent fight between two groups
bestseller	الأكثر مبيعًا	▸ a book that sells in large numbers
eventually	أخيرًا/ في النهاية	▸ after a long time
explorer	مستكشف	▸ someone who travels to places that people have not visited before
force	قوة	▸ a natural power
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	▸ describes something happening that it is good
go missing	يضل الطريق	▸ (become) lost
go on (doing something)	يستمر	▸ continue
keen on	حريص على	▸ be enthusiastic about
oasis	واحة	▸ a place in the desert where there is water and plants grow
oppose	يعارض	▸ disagree with something and try to stop it
poet	شاعر	▸ someone who writes poems

reform	إصلاح	a change to how we do things to make it fairer or more effective
strange	غريب	unusual, surprising or difficult to understand
trap	يحتجز/ يحبس	catch someone or something

Expressions & Idioms

across the desert	عبر الصحراء	give advice	يقدم نصيحة
around the world	حول العالم	go missing	يفقد طريقه
as soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن	make a meal	يصنع وجبة
ask for help	يطلب مساعدة	make him rich	يثريه/ يجعله غنيا
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	make pollution	يسبب تلوثًا
collect money for	يجمع المال من أجل	miss my country	أفتقد وطني
fail an exam	يرسب في امتحان	on their way to	في طريقهم إلى
find an answer for	يجد حلا لـ	say goodbye to	يودع

Phrases & Prepositions

answer to	حل لـ	hear of	يسمع عن
apply for	يتقدم بطلب (وظيفة مثلا)	increase in	زيادة في
belong to	ينتمي إلى/ يخص	interested in	مهتم بـ
die of	يموت من (مرض مثلا)	keen on	متحمس لـ
famous for	مشهور بـ	look for	يبحث عن
find out about	يعرف عن/ يكتشف عن	popular with	معروف/ محبوب لـ
good at	جيد في	popularity of	شعبية الـ
good for	مفيد لـ	reform of	إصلاح الـ
hear from	يتلقى أخبارا من	worried about	قلق على

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
almost	تقريبا	approximately	wholly بالكامل
force	قوة	strength	weakness ضعف
keen	حريص	eager	indifferent لامبال
oppose	يعارض	defy/ object	accept يقبل
reform	إصلاح / يصلح	amend/ repair	harm/ damage يضر
strange	غريب	weird/ unusual	common/ familiar شائع/ معروف
trap	يحتجز	seize/ capture	release يطلق سراح
alive	على قيد الحياة	conscious	dead ميت
attack	هجوم	aggression	defence دفاع
cruel	قاسٍ	harsh/ unkind	friendly/ merciful ودود/ رحيم
powerful	قوى	forceful/ strong	helpless/ weak ضعيف
violent	عنيف	fierce/ wild	calm/ gentle هادئ/ رقيق

Notes on Vocabulary

battle **quarrel** **dispute**

battle معركة (جزء من حرب)

- Many soldiers were wounded in the battle, but the army didn't lose the war.

quarrel شجار/ مشاجرة

- My son had a quarrel with some naughty boys at school.

dispute نزاع

- There is a dispute between the two countries about borders.

explorer **inventor** **discoverer**

explorer مستكشف
- Marco Polo was the first explorer to reach China.

inventor مخترع
- Thomas Edison was a great inventor in the field of electricity.

discoverer مكتشف
- The pharaohs were the discoverers of many metals.

take (time) to + inf.

- It took three weeks to fix the machines in the factory.
- It took me two hours to write this report.

يستخدم هذا التعبير بمعنى (يستغرق وقتا فى أداء عمل معين)

Compound Nouns الأسماء المركبة

- الأسماء المركبة هى أسماء تتكون من أكثر من كلمة مثل:

police station/football/teapot

- تكتب الأسماء المركبة كلمة واحدة أو كلمتين منفصلتين، أو كلمتين منفصلتين بينهما شرطة، أو أكثر من كلمتين بينها أكثر من شرطة:

bookshop/bathroom/goldmine/bus stop/water-skiing/electrical equipment/ playground/detective story/horse-riding/father-in-law

system **discipline**

نظام (لتشغيل أو ضبط آلة أو نشاط)
system
- A new alarm system has been installed in our office building.

نظام/ انضباط (التصرف)
discipline
- Some parents complained about the school's strict discipline.

adventure **adventurous** **adventurer**

مغامرة
adventure (n)
- Our grandfather always used to tell us about his adventures at sea.
- Jurassic Parks is a series of hair-raising adventure films.

لاحظ استخدامها قبل الاسم ليعطى معنى (به مغامرة/ يعطى إحساس المغامرة)

مغامر
adventurous (adj)
- Mr Sherbini isn't a very adventurous cook: he makes the common recipes.

شخص مغامر
adventurer (n)
- Damascus was a natural meeting point for traders and adventurers travelling from East to West.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
almost	تقريبا	approximately	wholly بالكامل
force	قوة	strength	weakness ضعف
keen	حريص	eager	indifferent لا مبال
oppose	يعارض	defy/ object	accept يقبل
reform	إصلاح / يصلح	amend/ repair	harm/ damage يضر
strange	غريب	weird/ unusual	common/ familiar شائع/ معروف
trap	يحتجز	seize/ capture	release يطلق سراح
alive	على قيد الحياة	conscious	dead ميت
attack	هجوم	aggression	defence دفاع
cruel	قاسٍ	harsh/ unkind	friendly/ merciful ودود/ رحيم
powerful	قوى	forceful/ strong	helpless/ weak ضعيف
violent	عنيف	fierce/ wild	calm/ gentle هادئ/ رقيق

Notes on Vocabulary

battle **quarrel** **dispute**

battle معركة (جزء من حرب)

- Many soldiers were wounded in the battle, but the army didn't lose the war.

quarrel شجار/ مشاجرة

- My son had a quarrel with some naughty boys at school.

dispute نزاع

- There is a dispute between the two countries about borders.

explorer **inventor** **discoverer**

explorer مستكشف
- Marco Polo was the first explorer to reach China.

inventor مخترع
- Thomas Edison was a great inventor in the field of electricity.

discoverer مكتشف
- The pharaohs were the discoverers of many metals.

take (time) to + inf.

- It took three weeks to fix the machines in the factory.
- It took me two hours to write this report.

يستخدم هذا التعبير بمعنى (يستغرق وقتا فى أداء عمل معين)

Compound Nouns **الأسماء المركبة**

- الأسماء المركبة هى أسماء تتكون من أكثر من كلمة مثل:

police station/football/teapot

- تكتب الأسماء المركبة كلمة واحدة أو كلمتين منفصلتين، أو كلمتين منفصلتين بينهما شرطة، أو أكثر من كلمتين بينها أكثر من شرطة:

bookshop/bathroom/goldmine/bus stop/water-skiing/electrical equipment/playground/detective story/horse-riding/father-in-law

system **discipline**

system نظام (لتشغيل أو ضبط آلة أو نشاط)
- A new alarm system has been installed in our office building.

discipline نظام/ انضباط (التصرف)
- Some parents complained about the school's strict discipline.

adventure **adventurous** **adventurer**

adventure (n) مغامرة
- Our grandfather always used to tell us about his adventures at sea.
- Jurassic Parks is a series of hair-raising adventure films.

لاحظ استخدامها قبل الاسم ليعطى معنى (به مغامرة/ يعطى إحساس المغامرة)

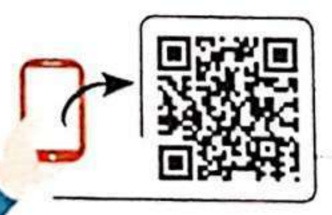
adventurous (adj) مغامر
- Mr Sherbini isn't a very adventurous cook: he makes the common recipes.

adventurer (n) شخص مغامر
- Damascus was a natural meeting point for traders and adventurers travelling from East to West.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. During the war, the soldier saw many of his friends fall in field ....
   a) battles b) quarrels c) disputes d) treaties
2. Alfred Nobel was the .... of dynamite.
   a) explorer b) inventor c) discoverer d) designer
3. Our maths teacher keeps good .... in class and the students like him.
   a) system b) fight c) discipline d) cure
4. Samy is a person who has always had an .... spirit.
   a) adventure b) adventurous c) adventurer d) adventuring
5. It took me three days .... my room with bright colours.
   a) paint b) painting c) painted d) to paint
6. The previous manager is in .... with the company about his contract.
   a) battle b) quarrel c) dispute d) war
7. The air-conditioning .... in the bank isn't working very well.
   a) system b) process c) discipline d) cure
8. As a young man Mr Donald went off to Africa, looking for ....
   a) adventure b) adventurous c) adventurer d) adventuring



Listening Text



Mustafa **:** Did you know, we're going to read *King Solomon's Mines* at school soon?

Hany **:** Yes, I heard. I'm looking forward to that. And for homework we have to find out about Rider Haggard, who wrote the book.

Mustafa **:** What do you know about him?

Hany **:** Not much. I know he's not alive and I think he was English.

Mustafa **:** Shall we try and find out more?

Hany **:** OK. Let's look on the internet. There must be a Rider Haggard website.



Mustafa : Here he is. Rider Haggard, born 1856, died 1925.

Hany : So he's been dead quite a long time. What else does it say?

Mustafa : Well, you were right; he was English, his father was a lawyer and his mother was a poet[1].

Hany : When did he start writing?

Mustafa : Wait a minute. OK, it says he wasn't very good at school, so he didn't apply for university. His father sent him to work in South Africa.

Hany : Did he stay in South Africa?

Mustafa : Yes, for a few years, then he went back to England, married and had a family.

Hany : So, when did he start writing?

Mustafa : Well, let's see. He became a lawyer first, but he didn't do very well because he was so keen on[2] writing.

Hany : What were his books about?

Mustafa : They were adventure stories which took place in Africa and were about explorers[3] discovering ancient African civilisations[4]. Sometimes the explorers were looking for diamonds.

Hany : Was he successful as a writer?

Mustafa : Yes. King Solomon's Mines, which took him only six weeks to write, was a bestseller[5] for a year.

Hany : What else did he write?

Mustafa : Let's see. *She*, about an ancient African queen, and *Allan Quatermain* are his best known other books.

Hany : And did he go on[6] working at the same time as being a writer?

Mustafa : Yes, he worked for the British government. He helped in the reform[7] of agriculture. He also travelled around the world.

Hany : I'm interested in learning more about him.

Mustafa : So am I, and I'm really looking forward to reading King Solomon's Mines.

Hany : Me, too.

شاعر (1)

حريص على/ متحمس لـ (2)

مستكشفون (3)

حضارات (4)

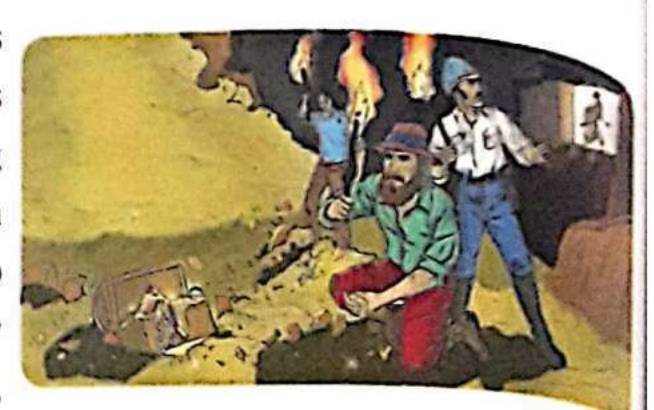
الأكثر مبيعا (5)

يستمر في (6)

إصلاح (7)

Reading Text

King Solomon's Mines



An Englishman, Sir Henry Curtis, is in Africa looking for his brother who has gone missing[1] while looking for King Solomon's Mines. Allan Quatermain, an adventurer and hunter who has a map of the mines, agrees to help Sir Henry look for his brother. A young African, Umbopa, travels with them as their servant.

When they walk across a desert, the group almost die of thirst, but eventually reach mountains. They cross the mountains into Kukuanaland, a country in a remote valley. Soldiers from the country's army[2] capture Sir Henry's group and are going to kill them, but suddenly become afraid when one of the Englishmen behaves strangely[3]. Soon the Kukuanas believe that the men have strange and powerful forces[4].

The Englishmen are taken to King Twala, a cruel, violent man who kills anyone who opposes[5] him. To become king, he killed his brother and sent his brother's wife and son Ignosi into the desert to die.

The servant Umbopa now tells the Englishmen that he is really Ignosi. Then, with his own soldiers and his English friends, he attacks the king's army. In the battle[6] that follows, Twala is killed. Then, one of the old king's advisers, Gagool, takes the group to King Solomon's Mines, where they find rooms full of gold and diamonds. While they are looking at the treasure, Gagool escapes and traps[7] the Englishmen in the mine without food or water. Fortunately[8], after a few days, they manage to get out of the mine, taking enough diamonds to make them rich.

The Englishmen say goodbye to the new King Ignosi and start their journey home. On their way, they stop at an oasis, where they find Sir Henry's brother.

(1) يضل الطريق
(2) جيش
(3) بشكل غريب
(4) قوة
(5) يعارض
(6) معركة
(7) يحجز/يحبس
(8) لحسن الحظ

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 His mother was a poet.

- تفيد كلمة poet شاعر أو شاعرة مثلها مثل teacher/doctor.

2 He didn't do very well because he was so keen on his writing.

- تستخدم well حالًا بعد الفعل do، وتأتى keen on بمعنى شغوف أو متحمس بعدها v-ing.

ويمكن وضع to + inf. بعد keen مثل:

He was keen to tell me the truth.

3 They were adventure stories which took place in Africa and were about explorers discovering ancient African civilisations.

- تأتى كلمة adventure مع stories بمعنى قصص المغامرات ولا نستخدم adventurous لأنها صفة للأشخاص بمعنى مغامر أو جسور على فعل شيء. أما adventurer فمعناها الشخص المغامر (دائم المغامرة) المخاطر بنفسه.

- استخدمت discovering بعد حذف who discover.

4 And did he go on working at the same time as being a writer?

- بعد go on نستخدم الفعل مضافا إليه ing بمعنى يستمر فى نفس العمل الذى كان قبل التوقف.

After opening the door, she went on doing her homework.

أما go on + to + inf. فمعناها ينتقل إلى عمل آخر.

After doing exercise A, I went on to do exercise B.

5 He helped in the reform of agriculture.

- كلمة reform تعنى إصلاح الأنظمة والمؤسسات أما repair فإصلاح الأجهزة والمعدات مثل vehicles أما mend أو repair فتأتى مع:

mend (or repair) a roof, fence سور, watch ساعة, radio, camera, puncture ثقب, etc:

6 I'm interested in learning more about him. - So am I.

- بعد so وهى بمعنى وكذلك نستخدم الفعل المساعد من جنس الفعل المساعد فى الجملة التى قبلها وعلى حسب الفاعل الذى بعدها مثال:

A) I have bought a car.	B) So have I or so has Omar.
A) I bought a car.	B) So did I/he/they.
A) I can speak English.	B) So can I/he/they.
A) I speak English.	B) So do I or So does he/she.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A/An .... is someone who travels through an unknown area to find out about it.
a) inventor b) explorer c) author d) discoverer

2 The Ministry of Education is taking great steps to .... education.
a) reform b) mend c) damage d) destroy

3 I play lots of sports but I am not .... on watching sports on TV.
a) interested b) excited c) pleased d) keen

4 A/An .... is a place in the desert where there are water and plants.
a) oasis b) spring c) suburb d) block

5 The play stopped because one of the actors was unwell and couldn't .... with the performance.
a) go in b) go up c) go into d) go on

6 I came very late because I was .... in the traffic jam.
a) imprisoned b) clapped c) trapped d) attacked

7 It was .... midnight when we finally reached our hotel in London.
a) soon b) almost c) near d) close

8 Kings and presidents hire .... whose job is to be consulted before making decisions.
a) poets b) advisers c) servants d) architects

9 My father really .... the idea that women can have children and a job at the same time.
a) supposes b) figures c) opposes d) oppresses

10 If you visit Egypt, it is .... to wear a hat if you go out in the sun.
a) advice b) advise c) advisor d) advisable

11 The crew of a small fishing boat has .... during a storm at sea.
a) appeared b) gone missing c) sunk d) disagreed

12 Many people died in the terrible .... of the Second World War.
a) beetles b) bottles c) foils d) battles

13 I've never been in this neighbourhood before, so it's .... to me.
a) violent b) cruel c) strange d) familiar

14 My brother studied hard. .... the exam was very hard so he got low marks.
a) Fortunately b) Fortunate c) Unfortunate d) Unfortunately

15 There was growing .... to the building of the factory in the village.
a) oppose b) opposition c) opposing d) disposing

16 Mr Essam worked so hard that he .... fell ill.
a) rarely b) fortunately c) eventually d) seldom

17. We've been more .... than a lot of people for having a job.
a) fortunately b) fortunate c) unfortunate d) unfortunately

18. James Bond novels have been .... since they were first written.
a) best sales b) sellers c) bestsellers d) sellings

19. Mariam has very strong opinions, but she always tries to understand the .... point of view.
a) oppressing b) supposing c) opposing d) disposing

20. Shakespeare was one of England's greatest .... He wrote great poems and plays.
a) scientists b) astronauts c) workers d) poets

21. Ancient Egyptian .... began around 7,000 years ago.
a) revolution b) organisation c) civilisation d) solution

22. Gamal Abdel Nasser was one of the most .... men in the Arab world.
a) power b) powerful c) powerless d) powered

23. Rome and Cairo are both famous for their .... monuments.
a) latest b) up-to-date c) ancient d) high-tech

24. The children were found .... and fine after being missing for several days in the forest.
a) dead b) killed c) alive d) life

25. I think it's .... to keep dogs locked up inside all day.
a) keen b) kind c) merciful d) cruel

26. My father was in the .... during the 6th October War. He was a young officer.
a) farm b) army c) circus d) embassy

27. My neighbour was the .... of a famous writer in Egypt.
a) serve b) service c) servant d) serviced

28. Most of the population in coastal towns is employed in .... and fishing.
a) economy b) agriculture c) literature d) culture

29. This is a book about the author's real-life .... in Africa.
a) adventure b) adventurous c) adventurer d) adventure's

30. The 2019 African Cup of Nations took .... in Egypt and it was very successful.
a) care b) place c) part d) turn

31. Poor .... workers looking for copper or brass suffer from bad working conditions.
a) mile b) fire c) mine d) dine

32. I usually .... my children from their school. It's part of my daily routine.
a) connect b) hand c) collect d) deliver

33. Before settling in one place, people were .... eating what they killed.
a) fighters b) sailors c) marines d) hunters

34. This giraffe was .... in Africa, then it was sent to our zoo.
a) arrested b) captured c) hanged d) shot

35. He was sentenced to prison because of all his .... actions.
a) criminal b) affectionate c) innocent d) delicate

36 Our armed .... protect us from any possible attacks by enemies.
a) courses b) sources c) forces d) powers

37 For centuries, thieves have been trying to steal .... from ancient tombs.
a) treasures b) pressures c) pleasures d) depressions

38 Don't be so .... It's just a scary movie. Switch the TV off.
a) frighten b) fright c) frightening d) frightened

39 I went to the airport to .... goodbye to my friend.
a) tell b) say c) speak d) make

40 The writer's story .... him rich because it was made into a film.
a) did b) found c) caused d) made

41 An outbreak of bird flu .... a lot of countries and caused a lot of deaths.
a) attacked b) attended c) attracted d) defended

42 Ali has improved his .... since he joined the summer camp.
a) behave b) behaving c) behaviour d) behaved

43 A .... is a clear, very hard valuable stone, used in jewellery and in industry.
a) diamond b) gold c) ring d) necklace

44 The new factory has given a big push to the .... of the city.
a) agriculture b) treasure c) economy d) health

45 The government managed to develop the electricity .... in Egypt during the last few years.
a) bill b) discipline c) software d) system

46 Organic food seems to be gaining in .... in many countries.
a) account b) popularity c) quality d) announcement

47 Historians believe that the Nile .... was the place of the first human civilisation.
a) valley b) flood c) oasis d) heights

48 The businessman is rich enough to hire a good .... to speak for him in court.
a) writer b) secretary c) lawyer d) designer

49 I told my friend not to be afraid to ask .... help if he needed it.
a) in b) on c) with d) for

50 My friend's .... isn't good with her brother, but she's very close to her sister.
a) relationship b) dispute c) race d) cure

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In accidents and natural disasters, doctors .... to save people's lives.
a) dispute b) battle c) quarrel d) quit

2 Photographers were out in .... at the cinema after the film's private show.
a) power b) unit c) army d) force

3 The local park was a/an .... of peace for me when I was young.
a) village b) resort c) oasis d) era

4 Don't fall into the .... of investing all your money in one place.
a) trap b) trip c) trickery d) task

5 Many people are taking a/an .... interest in match results.
a) easy b) keen c) extensive d) difficult

6 Mother asked my sister to cut the cookie dough into ....
a) necklaces b) silvers c) diamonds d) earrings

7 The WHO website is a .... of information about diseases.
a) spring b) mine c) well d) hole

8 The .... believed that the Sun and Moon were planets.
a) ancients b) modern c) developed d) sophisticated

9 A passer-by .... the robbery on film and handed it to the police.
a) gave b) arrested c) captured d) released

10 The driver was lucky to .... serious injury after the serious accident.
a) have b) suffer c) catch d) escape

Grammar

Noun + Preposition

an answer to	حل لـ	The police do not have an answer to rising crime.
a solution to	حل لـ	There are no simple solutions to the problem of pollution.
a reply to	رد على	We still haven't received a reply to our letter.
damage to	دمار لـ	The closure of the factory will cause damage to our economy.
increase in	زيادة في	There has been an increase in the price of petrol.
decrease in	نقص في	There is a decrease in the number of deaths from heart disease.
apology for	اعتذار عن	My teacher accepted my apology for my behaviour.
reason for	سبب/ دافع لـ	People give many reasons for wanting to change jobs.
cause of	مسبب لـ	A lighted match was the cause of the fire.

the problem of	مشكلة الـــ	The problem of street crime needs an urgent solution
the reform of	إصلاح الـــ	Many scientists take part in the reform of education
a supply of	إمداد من..	I've only got a week's supply of sugar left.
popularity of	شعبية الـــ	The popularity of the internet has soared ارتفعت lately

Adjective + Preposition

astonished at	مندهش لـــ	Asmaa was astonished at her sister's courage
brilliant at	رائع فى	Dina's brilliant at handling difficult clients.
good at	جيد فى	John is good at working in the garden.
clever at	ماهر فى	He is clever at skateboarding.
bad at	سيئ فى	I'm very bad at remembering people's names
terrible at	فظيع فى	My brother is terrible at playing chess.
angry about/at	غاضب بشأن	Pat is angry about walking in the rain.
disappointed at	خائب الأمل	I feel very disappointed at not getting the job
famous for	مشهور بـــ	Sandy is famous for singing songs.
fed up with	شديد الملل من	I'm fed up with this daily routine.
furious about	غاضب بشدة بسبب (شىء)	My uncle is furious about the accident.
furious with	غاضب من (شخص)	The teacher is furious with the naughty stude
sorry for	آسف لفعل شىء	He's sorry for eating in the lesson.
good for	مفيد لـــ	Watching too much TV isn't good for you.
bad for	سيئ لـــ/ مؤذٍ لـ	Sleeping late is very bad for you.
responsible for	مسئول عن	The airline is responsible for the safety of its pa
satisfied with	راض/ مقتنع بـــ	I'm not satisfied with the way he cut my hair
angry with	غاضب من شخص	'Please, don't be angry with me,' she said
annoyed with	متضايق من شخص	Sarah was annoyed with Ayah for forgetting her phone.

pleased with	مسرور من	Mai was pleased with her exam results.
delighted with	مسرور من	Ola was delighted with her new home.
popular with	معروف/ محبوب لـ	This hotel is very popular with tourists.
ashamed of	خجلان من	I felt ashamed of the things I'd said to him.
confident of	واثق من	The company is confident of success.
full of	مملوء بـ	The kitchen was full of smoke.
proud of/to	فخور بـ / أن	She is proud of riding a snowboard. I'm proud to be Egyptian.
afraid of	خائف من	They are afraid of losing the match.
frightened of	خائف من	I was frightened of being left by myself in the house.
terrified of	مرعوب من	The criminal was terrified of being caught.
scared of	مرعوب من	I've always been scared of dogs.
fond of	مغرم بـ	Hala is fond of going to parties.
worried about	قلق على	I'm worried about making mistakes.
excited about	مثار من/ فرح بـ	We are excited about making our own film.
happy about	سعيد بـ	The children are not happy about seeing a doctor.
sorry about	آسف على شيء	I'm so sorry about your father. (= I am sorry something bad has happened to him).
mad about	مفتون بـ	He's mad about computer games.
crazy about	مفتون/ مجنون بـ	The girl is crazy about playing tennis.
rude to	فظ تجاه/ خشن مع	Why are you so rude to her?
cruel to	قاسٍ/ وحشي تجاه	She was often cruel to her sister.
similar to	مشابه لـ	Her ideas are quite similar to mine.
keen to + inf.	متحمس لفعل شيء	The government is keen to raise our salaries.
keen on + v-ing	متحمس/ شديد التوق	I wasn't keen on going there on my own.
interested in	مهتم بـ	Are you interested in writing poems?

Verb + Preposition

apply for	يتقدم بطلب (وظيفة مثلًا)	He has applied for many jobs lately.
work for	يعمل لدى/ من أجل	She works for a big law firm in the city.
blame .... for	يلوم ..على	I can't blame you for committing the crime.
look for	يبحث عن	I spent most of the morning looking for my passport.
apologise for	يعتذر عن فعل شيء	I apologise for taking so long to reply.
hope for	يأمل في	The best I can hope for is to get high marks.
belong to	ينتمي إلى/ يخص	The car belongs to the woman next door.
apologise to	يعتذر لشخص	I apologised to the customers for wasting their money.
complain to	يشكو لشخص	He threatened to complain to the boss.
manage to	يفلح في/ ينجح في	I managed to escape by diving into the river.
die of	يموت من (مرض مثلًا)	He died of cancer.
accuse of	يتهم بـ	Her employers accused her of theft.
dream of	يحلم بـ	I dream of being a famous player.
consist of	يتكون من	Breakfast consisted of dry bread and a cup of tea.
hear of	يسمع عن	We didn't hear of his death until many years later.
hear from	يتلقى أخبارًا من	I haven't heard from you for a long time.
complain of	يشكو من شيء سيئ حدث له أو من مرض	She'd been complaining of headaches. He complained of being robbed.
congratulate on	يهنئ على	I congratulated him on passing the exam.
concentrate on	يركز على	Stop talking and concentrate on your work.

depend on	يعتمد على	I usually depend on my father.
rely on/count on	يعتمد على	You can always count on him for good advice.
believe in	يؤمن بـ	I don't believe in miracles.
succeed in	ينجح فى	I succeeded in getting a good job.
take part in	يشارك فى	All students took part in the discussions.
result in	يؤدى إلى/ ينتج عنه	The crash resulted in the death of 9 passengers.
care about/for	يهتم بـ/ يعتنى بـ	I don't think she cares about him at all.
complain about	يشكو من شىء هو غير راض عنه	She complained about her new washing machine.
know about	يعرف عن	He doesn't know about our culture.
find out about	يعرف عن/ يكتشف عن	I don't want anyone else to find out about this secret.
learn about	يعلم عن	We didn't learn about the situation until it was too late.
prevent from	يمنع من	The police prevented the thief from escaping.
protect from	يحمى من	The hat protected his face from the sun.
recover from	يشفى من	I haven't fully recovered from that flu I had.
suffer from	يعانى من	She suffered from depression اكتئاب for most of her life.
result from	ينتج من/ عن	The arrests resulted from a telephone call.
escape from	يهرب من	He escaped from prison with three other persons.
run out of	ينفد	We ran out of petrol before reaching Cairo.
supply ... with	يزود بـ	The ministry supplied most schools with computers.
stop ... from	يمنع من	We should stop children from staying up late.
increase by	يزداد بنسبة	Next year, it's expected that tourism will increase by 15%.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is very fond .... animals.
   a) on b) about c) to d) of
2. I knew he was famous .... King Solomon's Mines.
   a) for b) from c) about d) to
3. Nobody knows the real reason for the film's popularity .... children.
   a) to b) for c) of d) with
4. Huda loves English, but she's not very good .... maths.
   a) for b) by c) at d) with
5. When did Azza find .... that she had won the maths prize?
   a) out b) about c) of d) from
6. When Nihal finishes university, she's going to apply .... a job abroad.
   a) with b) for c) to d) at
7. In 1918, millions of people all over the world died .... Spanish flu.
   a) for b) of c) with d) at
8. Samira is very interested .... medicine and wants to be a doctor.
   a) to b) of c) for d) in
9. The popularity .... Mohammed Salah has increased recently.
   a) with b) from c) of d) to
10. The teacher asked the students to find out .... different kinds of energy for homework.
    a) about b) of c) to d) for

Extra Points

• يأتى بعد حروف الجر v-ing أو الاسم أو الضمير ما عدا to فيأتى بعدها المصدر.

- Dina is good at playing chess.
- I have always dreamt of going to the moon.
- I'm sorry about the noise last night.
- You get bored/fed up with doing the same thing every day.
- They were furious with me for not inviting them to my party.

❷ هناك تعبيرات وأفعال قليلة تستخدم بعدها to + v-ing:

To + v-ing/noun

look forward to	يتطلع إلى	I look forward to meeting you tonight!
be used to	يعتاد على	He's not used to driving on the left-hand side of the road!
get used to	يعتاد على	It took weeks to get used to living in that old city.
accustomed to	يعتاد على	He had become accustomed to living without electricity.
take to	يعتاد على/ يدمن	Recently he's taken to wearing a cap.
object to	يعترض على	He objects to spending so much money on a TV.
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	Writing, in addition to speaking, is very difficult.
admit to	يعترف بـ/ على	In court he admitted to lying about the accident.
be opposed to	يعارض	I am opposed to increasing taxes.
confess to	يعترف بـ/ على	He confessed to killing his next-door neighbour.
adjust to	يتكيف على	She adjusted to having neighbours around her.
adapt to	يتكيف على	Sand cats are adapted to living in the desert.
devote .... to	يكرس جهدا ..لـ	Mother Teresa devoted her life to helping the poor.
be addicted to	يدمن	Mo'men is addicted to playing PES 2017.




لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ahmed is extremely proud .... his students' rapid progress.
a) from b) about c) for d) of

2 Mr Mohamed is not very good .... remembering his students' names.
a) on b) for c) at d) about

3 He's very unpredictable. He's always full .... surprises!
a) from b) of c) about d) off

4 My father objected .... my going to the cinema.
a) to b) about c) on d) for

5 A lot of diseases resulted .... pollution.
a) in b) from c) to d) of

6 They were furious .... me for not inviting them to my party.
a) of b) to c) with d) about

7 Are you excited .... going on holiday next week?
a) on b) of c) about d) to

8 We stayed at home because Mariam wasn't very keen .... going out in the rain.
a) to b) on c) of d) about

9 The flat is nice, but we object to .... without electricity.
a) be lived b) being lived c) live d) living

10 She doesn't often go out in the night because she's afraid .... the dark.
a) from b) at c) of d) to

11 I've never seen so many people before. I'm astonished .... the crowds.
a) about b) at c) with d) from

12 I don't feel sorry .... her because her problems are her own fault.
a) about b) on c) to d) from

13 He is responsible .... what appears in his newspaper.
a) from b) at c) on d) for

14 She is brilliant .... repairing things.
a) on b) at c) to d) with

15 I'm angry .... him for telling lies about me.
a) about b) at c) with d) from

16 I can't understand people who are cruel .... animals.
a) at b) about c) from d) to

17 Your shoes are similar .... mine but they are not exactly the same.
a) on b) to c) from d) with

18 It is very kind of you to .... for your old parents.
a) look b) hope c) afraid d) care

19 The Ministry of Education supplies our school .... computer sets.
a) by b) with c) on d) in

20 Experts expect that the population of Egypt will increase .... 15% in 2030.
a) in b) with c) by d) on

21 The explorers were looking .... diamonds.
a) to b) for c) in d) after

22 He helped in the reform .... agriculture.
a) on b) about c) of d) to

23 I'm interested .... learning more about him.
a) in b) to c) on d) about

24 What's the main reason for the popularity .... Rider Haggard's books?
a) about b) to c) with d) of

25 He was so .... at writing exciting stories.
a) fond b) good c) proud d) popular

26 Have Rider Haggard's books always been popular .... readers?
a) about b) at c) with d) of

27 There's been an increase .... sales in recent years.
a) of b) in c) to d) on

28 I'd never heard .... him at all until last week.
a) with b) of c) to d) on

29 They had four sons, but one of them died .... a childhood disease when he was only ten.
a) to b) with c) of d) out

30 What environmental problem are you most worried ....?
a) with b) to c) about d) in

31 What is the answer .... the problem of climate change?
a) from b) to c) about d) in

32 Which job will you apply .... in the future?
a) for b) in c) about d) on

33 William Shakespeare is more famous .... his plays than his poems.
a) of b) for c) from d) by

34 That little black car belongs .... my uncle.
a) for b) with c) to d) by

35 I play lots of sports, but I'm not very keen .... watching sport on TV.
a) to b) on c) for d) at

36 You weren't at school yesterday, so how did you find .... about the homework?
a) with b) from c) out d) of

37 We could run out .... oil in the next twenty years.
a) of b) from c) with d) in

38 My daughter is .... at writing exciting stories
a) keen b) interested c) brilliant d) proud

39 Farida is very good .... writing stories.
a) for b) at c) of d) to

40 You should apologise .... your teacher for forgetting your homework.
a) about b) at c) for d) to

41 He didn't apologise .... Ahmed when he was ill.
a) to visit b) of visiting c) for not visiting d) not for visiting

42 Our population has increased .... 15 percent lately.
a) in b) by c) to d) of

43 The object .... the exercise was to build a sense of teamwork.
a) with b) to c) for d) of

44 They were keen .... attend my party.
a) to b) about c) on d) for

45 I'm .... being treated as a child.
a) fed up at b) fed with c) fed up with d) fed up to

46 I was astonished .... so many people there.
a) to seeing b) to see c) to being seen d) to be seen

47 If you don't know the answer, don't be afraid .... say so.
a) to b) of c) from d) about

48 Some residents opposed to .... the high school after a former minister.
a) name b) naming c) be named d) names

49 Courses can be adapted .... the needs of the individuals.
a) to being suited b) to be suited c) to suiting d) to suit

50 You have to apply .... the passport office for a visa.
a) to b) about c) for d) of

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Tamer and Samar .... for Dubai at 8 o'clock next Tuesday morning.
a) have left b) had left c) have been leaving d) are leaving

2 You .... your magazines on the bed! Please, clean up.
a) had always left b) are always leaving c) always left d) have always left

3 He .... to the cinema.
a) goes often b) is often going c) often goes d) is going often

4 Gamal .... computer games for an hour now.
a) has been playing b) plays c) has played d) is playing

5 It was clever of him .... the crossword in five minutes.
a) did b) do c) doing d) to do

6 I don't know when he .... - would you like to wait?
a) returned b) will return c) has returned d) returns

7 Ahmed .... as an engineer for five years, then he became a university professor.
a) worked b) has worked c) has been working d) works

8 Who taught you .... a car?
a) driving b) to drive c) drive d) drove

9 The man .... invented the telephone was called Alexander Graham Bell.
a) whose b) what c) who's d) who

10 You must get here .... 7 o'clock or else we will have to leave without you.
a) on b) by c) until d) during

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل برجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Asking for and responding to help
طلب المساعدة والرد عليها

Asking for help	*Responding to help*
• Please, could you help me to (lift this desk)?	**الموافقة**
• I wonder if you could help me with my homework.	• Yes, of course. • Yes, what's the problem? • What would you like me to do? • I'd be happy to help.
• I don't suppose you could help me with (my homework).	**عدم الموافقة**
• Would it be possible for you to help me with my homework?	• Sorry, I can't. • I'm afraid, I can't.



Writing: A reply to an email

Leila's friend Aisha is working with a charity and promised to collect money for it on Saturday. Yet, she can't spend all the day in town, so she asked Leila for help.



From : Leila
To : Aisha
Subject : Agreeing to help.

Dear Aisha,

I'd like to tell you that I'm OK. These days, I'm working on a project for my school. Are you doing well?

In your email you asked me to help you collect money for a charity on Saturday. I'd like to ask you what charity are you helping and what kind of service this charity provides people. I'd like to say that I'm ready to help you, but I can only do this in the morning. I have some important things to do in the evening.

Please, email me soon to say whether my offer will help.

Love,
Leila

Skills Exercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. The kind of stories or films you enjoy in your free time.
2. How can we encourage children and young men to take reading as a hobby?

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Adventure stories about strange places are still popular with many people nowadays. This is also true about space exploration stories.
2. African civilisation has always been a mystery that excites many people all over the world. Many adventurers still think of Africa as a mine of treasures.
3. Freedom of expression must have rules. It is your right to express your opinion freely, but you must respect the others.

4. Private schools and universities can play a role in developing education and enhancing students' abilities. They have more facilities than public ones.
5. The story represents the battle between good and evil in the fight for power. However, good triumphs in the end.
6. We owe a lot to the people who have made great contributions to making the world a better place. Scientists and thinkers are at the top of them.

B) Translate into English:

١ – إن استثمار الطاقة البشرية وتنميتها هما السبيل للتقدم لأن البشر هم الذين يصنعون الحضارة.
٢ – رغم أننا نعيش عصر العلم والتطور التكنولوجى لا يزال هناك مغامرون يحلمون باكتشاف الكنوز المفقودة.
٣ – تهتم الحكومة بإصلاح نظام التعليم لمواكبة التطور العلمى المستمر ولإنتاج جيل واعٍ ونافع لبلده.
٤ – أسعد فوز الفريق المصرى لكرة اليد للشباب بالميدالية البرونزية لكأس العالم ٢٠١٩ كل المصريين لذا قام رئيس الجمهورية بتكريمهم.
٥ – لم يكن دور الرحالة القدماء وصف الأماكن فقط ولكنهم كانوا يسجلون مظاهر الحضارة فى كل بلد يزورونها.
٦ – بالرغم من أن التليفزيون هو أكبر وسائل الترفيه إلا أننا يمكن أن نستخدمه كوسيلة للثقافة والمعرفة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

aspects	مظاهر	generation	جيل
contributions	إسهامات	honour	تكريم
enhance	يعزز	means	وسائل
culture	الثقافة	mystery	سر/ غموض
excite	يثير	represent	يمثل
explorers	الرحالة	respect	يحترم
freedom	الحرية	triumph	ينتصر/ انتصار



Test 5 Based on Unit 13

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Reforming education is an important factor in the .... against ignorance and superstition.
a) quarrel b) battle c) race d) competition

2 The president's .... were appointed to be consulted before taking a decision.
a) advisers b) drivers c) astronauts d) pilots

3 When my kid .... missing just for a while, I lost my mind.
a) came b) arrived c) went d) played

4 Unfortunately, the little fox got its foot caught in a .... and was badly hurt.
a) nest b) trap c) hole d) trick

5 The team brought a/an .... of supporters to the stadium with them.
a) ministry b) class c) area d) army

6 The verb "seize" is similar in meaning to the verb ....
a) release b) attract c) capture d) advise

7 He was sorry .... me on, while I was having dinner.
a) for not calling b) for calling c) not for calling d) not to call

8 Don't use that pen, it belongs .... the director!
a) to b) in c) of d) for

9 My father works .... an international oil company.
a) from b) to c) for d) about

10 There has been an increase .... the number of tourists going to Luxor.
a) in b) at c) for d) of

11 You should apologise to your teacher .... the mistakes in the essay.
a) from b) to c) for d) about

12 Until I read "*King Solomon's Mines*", I had never heard .... Rider Haggard.
a) in b) of c) from d) with

13 My teacher accepted my apology .... my behaviour.
a) on b) at c) for d) of

14 Asmaa was astonished .... her sister's courage.
a) at b) about c) of d) on

15 I can't blame you .... committing the crime.
a) of b) for c) on d) about

16 He had become accustomed to .... without electricity.
a) live b) be lived c) being lived d) living

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Video and television are responsible for the declining interest in reading among youth. They do nothing to build up reading skills. If the children's time is devoted to reading, the population would be better educated.

Reading a story is an active partnership between writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, but watching something is totally passive.

The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television.

Their difficulty is not reading the words – it is interpreting them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. Only by reading daily a child will become a strong and ***independent*** reader.

Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without the television, the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Reading helps people to be ....

a) well-paid
b) good actors
c) well-educated
d) good writers

18 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) the young
b) video and television
c) children
d) reading skills

19 According to the writer's view, TV is .... means of entertainment.

a) not an effective
b) an encouraging
c) an effective
d) not a cheap

20 The synonym of the word "***independent***" is ....

a) active
b) intelligent
c) aware
d) self-determining

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What is the writer's main objection to video and TV?

22 What is the difference between reading a story and watching something?

23 The writer believes that visual images, such as watching television, spoil the imagination. Do you agree? Why?

24 How can we encourage reading among people? Give two ways.

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

The continuous progress in all scientific fields makes it harder for the developing countries to keep up with the developed countries.

26 **Translate into English:**

- يحب بعض الناس السفر للبلاد الإفريقية بحثا عن المغامرة والإثارة أو كليهما على الرغم من الظروف الصعبة التى يواجهونها.

27 **Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:**

How can we encourage children and young men to take reading as a hobby?





Unit 14

Digital media

Objectives

Listening : Predicting; listening for detail

Grammar : Conditionals

Reading : Reading for specific information

Critical thinking : Considering the advantages of social networking sites

Functions : Giving warnings

Writing : Writing an email giving a warning



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

cassette player (n)	مشغل كاسيت/ موسيقى	irritable (adj)	سريع الغضب والتوتر
chat (v) (ted)	يدردش	more or less	تقريبًا
disadvantages (n)	عيوب	rule (n)	قاعدة
download (v) (ed)	يحمِّل من الإنترنت	stick to (v) (stuck - stuck)	يلتزم بـ
DVD (n)	أسطوانة (دى فى دى)	type (v) (d)	يكتب (على الكمبيوتر)
exclude (v) (d)	يستبعد	unpleasant (adj)	غير سار/ غير لطيف
exclusion (n)	استبعاد/ استثناء	video (n)	شريط/ مقطع فيديو

Vocabulary On Listening

actually (adv)	بالفعل	owner (n)	مالك
advertise (v) (d)	يعلن	own (v) (ed)	يمتلك
advertisement (n)	إعلان	polite (adj)	مؤدب
brief (adj)	مختصر	politeness (n)	أدب
careful (adj)	حريص	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
contact (v) (ed) (n)	يتصل/ اتصال	public (adj)	عام
discussion (n)	مناقشة	realise (v) (d)	يدرك
join (v) (ed)	ينضم إلى	remind (v) (ed)	يُذكر
language (n)	لغة	rude (adj)	وقح/ غير مؤدب
online (adj) (adv)	عبر/ متصل بالإنترنت	subject (n)	موضوع
		upset (adj)	منزعج

Focus on Vocabulary

cassette player	مشغل كاسيت/ موسيقى	▸ a machine that plays music on a cassette
chat	يدردش	▸ talk in a friendly way
disadvantages	عيوب	▸ things that cause problems, or that make someone or something less likely to be successful or effective
download	يحمِّل من الإنترنت	▸ to move information or programs from a computer network to a small computer
DVD	أسطوانة (دى فى دى)	▸ a digital video disc that can store enough information to play a film
exclude	يستبعد	▸ stop someone going to a place or taking part in something
irritable	سريع الغضب والتوتر	▸ getting annoyed quickly or easily
more or less	تقريبًا	▸ about, approximately
rule	قاعدة	▸ an instruction that says what you can and can't do
stick to	يلتزم بـ	▸ not change what you are doing, or what you have decided to do
type	يكتب (على الكمبيوتر)	▸ write using a keyboard
unpleasant	غير سار/ غير لطيف	▸ describes something that causes unhappiness or discomfort
video	شريط فيديو	▸ a tape of a film or television programme

Expressions & Idioms

break the rules	يخالف القواعد	make .... sad	يُحزن
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن	make new friends	يكون صداقات جديدة
go for a swim	يذهب للسباحة	make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال بـ	pass an exam/ a test	يجتاز امتحانًا

Phrases & Prepositions

addicted to	مدمن لـ	full of	ملىء بـ
agree with	يتفق مع	rude to	وقح مع
chat with/to	يدردش مع	sell to	يبيع لـ
disadvantages of	عيوب لـ	unpleasant to	غير لطيف مع
exclude from	يستبعد من	warn about/ of	يحذر من

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
chat	دردشة	conversation	silence	صمت
disadvantages	عيوب	demerits	advantages	مميزات
exclude	يستبعد	ignore/eliminate	include	يشمل/ يتضمن
irritable	سريع الغضب	prickly	cheerful	مبتهج/ مرح
stick	يلتزم	adhere	disobey	يخالف/ لا يطيع
unpleasant	غير سار	disagreeable	pleasant	سار
brief	موجز	concise	lengthy/ detailed	مستفيض
contact	اتصال	connection	separation	فصل/ انفصال
probably	من المحتمل	likely	improbably/unlikely	من غير المحتمل
upset	منزعج	worried/ annoyed	calm/ comfortable	هادئ
doubt	شك	confusion	certainty/ faith	تأكد/ يقين
replace	يستبدل	change	keep	يحافظ على

Notes on Vocabulary

advertise announce

advertise يعلن عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان أو وظيفة

- The perfume has been advertised in all the major women's magazines.
- We need to advertise for a new chef for the restaurant.

announce يعلن/ يذيع (خبرًا أو معلومة)

- The government announced plans to open more factories.
- We arrived just as they were announcing the arrival of father's flight.

communicate contact connect

communicate يتواصل/ يتفاهم

- People use more than words when they communicate with each other.

contact يتصل بـ/ يحتك بـ/ اتصال

- As my friend is abroad, we contact by email.
- There is very little contact between the two cities.

connect يصل/ يربط بين شيئين

- The railway connects Cairo with most cities in Egypt.

Abbreviations

الاختصارات هى استخدام أجزاء من الكلمات أو استخدام الحروف الأولى من مجموعة من الكلمات للدلالة عليها ومن هذه الاختصارات:

CD	compact disc	أسطوانة (قرص مدمج)
IT	information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
PC	personal computer	حاسوب شخصى
WWW	World Wide Web	شبكة الإنترنت العالمية
ID	identity card	بطاقة هوية
BCE	before common era	قبل الميلاد
DVD	digital video disc or digital versatile disc	قرص فيديو رقمى

private **special**

private — خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)
- My grandfather didn't want to discuss his private life with anyone.

special — خاص (من نوع خاص)
- I only wear this suit on special occasions, like weddings.

realise **recognise**

realise — ١- يدرك
٢- يحقق (طموحًا/ نجاحًا)
- I suddenly realised that the boy was crying.
- She never realised her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

recognise — يتعرف على
- I hadn't seen her for ten years, but I recognised her immediately.

social **sociable**

social — اجتماعى (تستخدم لوصف الأشياء)
- Group play helps children develop social skills.

sociable — اجتماعى (تستخدم لوصف الأشخاص)
- She's a friendly, sociable woman.

weather **climate**

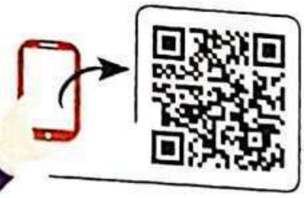
weather — طقس (حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة)
- What's the weather like today?

climate — مناخ (حالة الجو لفترة طويلة)
- Scotland's climate is too cold for some plants to grow.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt Air regrets to .... the cancellation of flight BA205 to Madrid.
   a) advertise b) announce c) clear d) accuse
2. The .... is expected to remain clear for the next few days.
   a) climate b) atmosphere c) weather d) hemisphere
3. Most students are more .... when their exams are over.
   a) social b) individual c) team d) sociable
4. Most villages in Upper Egypt are now .... by roads.
   a) connected b) contacted c) communicated d) chattered
5. My friend goes to a/ an .... governmental school for the blind.
   a) private b) special c) general d) obvious
6. It is said that dolphins use sound to .... with each other.
   a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link
7. The young couple finally .... their goal of buying a summer home.
   a) recognised b) failed c) accompanied d) realised
8. Overpopulation is one of the country's serious .... problems.
   a) social b) sociable c) solo d) suicidal



Listening Text



Taha : Hi, Imad. Could I ask your advice about something?

Imad : Sure, how can I help?

Taha : Well, I've just joined an online discussion group and I'm not sure what the rules are.

Imad : What's the subject of the group?

Taha : Birds.

Imad : Actually, it doesn't really matter what the subject is. If you join any discussion group, the rules are more or less[1] the same. Probably the most important rule is that you must always be polite. You can disagree with other people, but you must not be rude or unpleasant[2] to them.

(1) تقريبًا
(2) غير سار / غير لطيف

Taha : That's the same as when you're actually with people. If I was with people I didn't know very well , I would never be rude to them.

Imad : Yes, of course. Another rule(3) is that you shouldn't try to advertise or sell things to members of the group.

Taha : That's OK. I've got nothing to sell. If I contact the group, I'll only tell people about birds that I've seen, or ask them questions about birds.

Imad : What else? Remember to type(4) carefully and don't write long messages. What language does the group use?

Taha : It's an international group, so we use English.

Imad : Another thing to remember is that your messages are public, which means that anyone can read them: your family, your friends, even your teacher.

Taha : Oh yes, I hadn't thought about that.

Imad : Yes, you must be careful not to make anyone upset. And another thing: you should always stick to(5) the subject.

Taha : That's OK. I only want to write about birds.

Imad : There's probably a Help page where you can ask other members questions if you aren't sure about anything. And if you write anything that you shouldn't, the owner of the group may email you to remind you about the rules.

Taha : I didn't realise that discussion groups had owners.

Imad : Most of them do. It can be quite an important job if it's a busy group and there are a lot of members. Sometimes they exclude(6) people from the group if they break the rules.

Taha : I'm sure that I won't break any rules. But anyway, thanks a lot, that's really helpful advice.

Imad : That's OK. If I had known that you were joining the discussion group, I would have joined, too. I love birds!

Taha : It's not too late. You can join now!

(3) قاعدة

(4) يكتب (على الكمبيوتر)

(5) يلتزم بـ

(6) يستبعد

Reading Text

Young people and technology



If you had asked young people 20 years ago how they spent their free time, they would probably have said that they watched television and videos(1), listened to music on cassette players(2) or spent time with their friends.

If you asked the same question today, the answers would be very different. Although we still watch television, there are many more channels than there were in the past, and DVDs(3) have replaced videos. We now listen to CDs, but more of us are downloading(4) music and films from the internet. We can listen to or watch these on computers or mobile phones.

Of course, we still spend time with our friends, but more of our conversations with them are by text message or through online social networking sites like Facebook and Twitter. These are becoming more popular as ways of communicating with friends and of making new friends. Some people are spending more time chatting(5) to their virtual friends than to their real friends.

(1) أشرطة فيديو
(2) أجهزة تشغيل كاسيت
(3) اسطوانات (دي في دي)
(4) يحمل من الإنترنت
(5) يدردش
(6) عيوب
(7) يفقد الاتصال بـ
(8) سريع الغضب

There is no doubt that modern technology allows us to communicate with many more people than we could in the past, but there are disadvantages(6). Researchers have found that some people are losing touch with(7) their real friends and becoming addicted to their mobile phones, to their computers and to social networking sites. If they cannot use their phones and computers, some people become nervous and irritable(8). And if more people become addicted to their phones, they will find it hard to make real friends.

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1. I'm not sure what the rules are ....
- بعد I'm not sure استخدمت جملة غير مباشر بأداة ربط + فاعل + فعل what the rules are.

2. There are many more channels than there were in the past,
There is no doubt that modern technology allows us to communicate with many more people than we could in the past.
- لاحظ استخدام many قبل صيغة المقارنة more للدلالة على الفرق الكبير فى المقارنة بمعنى (أكثر بكثير).

3. These are becoming more popular as ways of communicating with friends and of making new friends.
- استخدمت as للتعبير عن الحقيقة وليس للتشبيه بمعنى (كـ أو بصفته).

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Online group members can be .... if they break the rules.
   a) included b) excluded c) rewarded d) decoded
2. I was meeting these chaps who were mostly .... my own age.
   a) less or more b) less or less c) more and more d) more or less
3. The doctor says if you .... well to your diet, you will lose weight.
   a) stay b) tie c) stick d) attach
4. You must .... your password to be able to use your email.
   a) type b) take c) read d) present
5. My sister had such a/an .... experience at the park that she refused to go there again.
   a) attractive b) nice c) pleasant d) unpleasant
6. The man says he's unable to give up smoking as he's completely .... to it.
   a) addicted b) attained c) attacked d) applied
7. The most important .... of treating people is that you must be polite.
   a) download b) discussion c) role d) rule
8. One of the .... of this car is that it uses a lot of petrol.
   a) advantages b) disadvantages c) quantities d) merits

9 My sister spends hours on the phone .... with her friends.

a) chatting b) choking c) checking d) cheating

10 You can .... a copy of some programmes from many websites for free.

a) load b) overload c) upload d) download

11 Since Magdy gave up smoking, people complain that he's been really ....

a) calm b) irritable c) confident d) patient

12 Unfortunately, I've .... touch with all my old school friends.

a) gained b) kept c) lost d) missed

13 The new perfume has been .... in all women's magazines.

a) advertised b) announced c) produced d) repaired

14 The children were very .... that we couldn't go to the zoo at the weekend.

a) delighted b) pleased c) appointed d) disappointed

15 My grandfather .... the navy when he was 18 and he spent a happy time at the sea.

a) retired b) joined c) left d) missed

16 More and more people are buying things .... as it is easier and cheaper than shops.

a) online b) offline c) up line d) in line

17 The children spent a/ an .... day at the beach and didn't want to go back home.

a) awful b) terrible c) cloudy d) pleasant

18 Students can get all kinds of information from the neighbouring .... library.

a) special b) general c) public d) empty

19 All the messages you write on the discussion group should be .... and easy to read.

a) bright b) complex c) brief d) long

20 Our friends on the internet are .... friends. They are not real.

a) visual b) virtual c) vertical d) factual

21 The young man .... me that we had in fact met before at a conference in London.

a) reminded b) remembered c) mentioned d) memorized

22 I wanted to watch the film, but my father changed the .... to watch the football match.

a) canal b) channel c) set d) video

23 Parents sometimes find it difficult to .... with their teenage children.

a) link b) connect c) communicate d) attach

24 It is believed that email has largely .... the traditional business letter.

a) replaced b) placed c) renewed d) destroyed

25 Some young men spend most of their time on social networking ...., especially the Facebook.
a) sights b) sites c) views d) logs

26 In India, there is a big economic and social .... between the poor and the rich.
a) collection b) collocation c) contrast d) connect

27 Doctors believe that thousands of patients have .... from the new treatment so far.
a) harmed b) injured c) healed d) benefited

28 You really need patience and .... to succeed in this hard job.
a) confidence b) suspicion c) allusion d) delusion

29 My uncle feels really .... after the death of his wife and he is always sad.
a) alone b) lonely c) confident d) relieved

30 Many people now .... on the internet for getting information and news.
a) reply b) apply c) imply d) rely

31 Doctors sometimes .... patients that their medicine will have side effects.
a) reward b) warn c) award d) recommend

32 My friend was sad that he didn't .... his driving test yesterday.
a) pass b) succeed c) manage d) fail

33 The .... of social networking sites increases every year.
a) position b) population c) probability d) popularity

34 It is not advisable to chat with other people about your .... life on the internet
a) special b) public c) private d) general

35 The clerk won't last long in his job, if he is so .... to the customers.
a) polite b) rude c) caring d) active

36 I was very .... to hear that the party at school had been cancelled.
a) upset b) pleased c) appointed d) delighted

37 I have some .... about the new clerk's ability to do the job. He doesn't seem efficient.
a) assets b) prohibitions c) doubts d) calamities

38 Finding a cure for cancer is one of the biggest challenges facing medical ....
a) paramedics b) facilities c) assistants d) researchers

39 I promised my friend to send him a .... message as soon as I have any news.
a) chat b) text c) call d) photo

40 The lifeboat .... the sailors from the sinking boat.
a) rescued b) endangered c) kidnapped d) hurt

41 My cousin is a great lover of .... music of Upper Egypt.
a) pop b) modern c) traditional d) civil

42 My uncle gives lectures at the .... of education at Ain Shams University.
a) station b) colleague c) division d) college

43 My brother is very .... about driving again after the terrible accident he had.
a) irritable b) nervous c) active d) astonished

44 The play is based on a true story about .... people in Africa.
a) factual b) imaginary c) forged d) real

45 We lived so close to the sea that we could hear the .... breaking on the beach.
a) waves b) boats c) winds d) thunders

46 My parents always complain that I waste much time chatting .... my friends online.
a) about b) in c) to d) over

47 Getting low marks in his final exams .... his family very sad.
a) did b) performed c) caused d) made

48 Mohamed Salah's sharing in the programme against drugs helped some people fight ....
a) ambition b) distinction c) destination d) addiction

49 Many students are punished because of .... the school rules.
a) breaking b) keeping c) obeying d) fixing

50 In English 'Dr' is written as a/an .... of 'Doctor'.
a) form b) type c) abbreviation d) replacement

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The police have .... theft as a motive for the murder as no money was stolen.
a) included b) excluded c) expected d) accepted

2 You can get .... of the nightly news from the BBC's home page.
a) uploads b) information c) downloads d) data

3 My book got wet in the rain and all the pages have .... together.
a) stuck b) kept c) closed d) exempted

4 The Police said that a DNA .... must be done to all the accident victims.
a) imagination b) search c) programme d) typing

5 Every year a lot of companies go .... and have stock market shares.
a) public b) clear c) private d) special

6 The manager said that all the complaints about the company's products should be made through the proper ....
a) canals b) shares c) channels d) rails

7 Finding a cheap place to rent is a/an .... impossibility in Alexandria during the summer.
a) imaginative b) available c) visual d) virtual

8 Most Charities' head offices are .... in the capital.
a) accompanied b) sited c) exempted d) demolished

9 My father can't eat grapes - they .... his stomach.
a) refresh b) relieve c) upset d) annoy

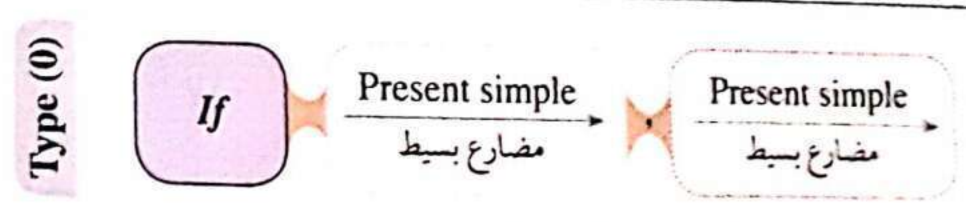
10 The word "demerit" is similar in meaning to the word ....
a) advantage b) popularity c) acceptance d) disadvantage



Grammar

The Conditional Sentence الجملة الشرطية

1 The Zero Conditional الحالة الشرطية الصفرية



- تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية (شيء لا نتحكم فيه).
- If water gets very cold, it turns into ice.
- If you drop something, it falls to the ground.
- وتعبر الحالة الصفرية أيضًا عن عادة متكررة لدى الشخص ويمكن استخدام when فى هذه الحالة:
- If/When I feel ill, I stay at home. (continuous habit)
- If I use the computer for a long time, I usually/always have a headache.

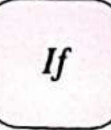
Active	Passive
If we heat ice, it melts.	Ice melts if it is heated.



2 The First Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الأولى





Type (1) | *If* | Present simple مضارع بسيط → , (will - may - can - should للنصيحة) + inf.

- تعبر الحالة الأولى عن حدث محتمل فى المستقبل.

- If he leaves early, he will be on time for the meeting.
- If she comes late, we will miss the bus.
- If he doesn't repay the debt, he'll go to prison.

- نستخدم (should) فى جواب الشرط للنصيحة و(have to) للوجوب والإلزام.

- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you lose your credit card, you have to ring the bank.

- يمكن استخدام may للاحتمال و can للاستطاعة.

- If you speak English well, you may get this job.
- We can go for a walk if you come early.
- If there is an airport here, we will be able to (can) travel abroad easily.

- تعبر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو أمنية أو تهديد.

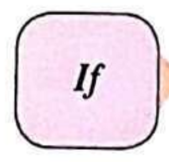
- If you come first in the English test, I will give you this good camera.
- If I win the gold medal, I will be very famous.
- I won't lend you any money if you insist on spending it carelessly.

- يمكن أن يبدأ جواب الشرط فى الحالة الأولى بأمر (مصدر) أو نهى:

- If you are tired, go to bed.
- If Samy visits you, don't tell him about our meeting.

3 The Second Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الثانية



Type (2) | *If* | Past simple ماضى بسيط → , (would - might - could) + inf.

- تعبر الحالة الثانية عن حدث غير محتمل فى المضارع أو المستقبل.

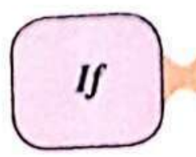
- If I saw a ghost, I would run away. (unlikely to happen)
- If I discovered a planet, I would give it my name. (unlikely to happen)
- If I were a bird, I could fly. I'm not a bird. (untrue in the present)
- If I were you, I'd try harder. (Giving advice)



The Third Conditional

الحالة الشرطية الثالثة

Type (3)



If + Past perfect ماضِ تام , (would - could - might) + have + P.P.

- تعبر الحالة الثالثة عن حدث مستحيل أو ندم أو انتقاد لحدث فى الماضى.

- If I had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen. (I didn't lock it.)
- If he had behaved well, the teacher wouldn't have punished him. (He didn't behave well.)

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If it .... today, we won't go to the park.
a) rained b) 'll rain c) rains d) had rained

2 If you mix hydrogen and oxygen, you .... water.
a) get b) got c) would get d) will get

3 If you had told me about your problem earlier, I .... you.
a) helped b) would have helped c) would help d) will help

4 He isn't here. But if he were here, he .... you.
a) will meet b) would meet c) can meet d) would have met

5 What .... if you found a burglar in your house?
a) will you do b) you would do c) would you do d) you do

6 If you are late, ... a taxi.
a) would take b) should take c) take d) will take

7 If I use the computer for a long time, I always .... a headache.
a) have b) will have c) would have d) had

8 If you .... things properly, you wouldn't have got into a mess.
a) had planned b) planned c) plan d) have planned

9 What would have happened if the passenger .... her mobile phone?
a) didn't have b) doesn't have c) had not had d) won't have

10 If the tree had fallen down, it .... the road. Thank God.
a) will block b) may block c) would block d) would have blocked

Unless – Without – In case of

Unless لو لم	+	فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة) he had phoned me	, جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية) I wouldn't have visited him.
In case of فى حالة ***Without*** بدون	+	**noun/ v-ing**	In case of emergency الطوارئ, call the police. Without your apology, I won't speak to you again.
But for لو لا	+	**(n)**	But for Hany's illness, he'd have got the job.

- يمكن استخدام (Unless) بدلًا من (If) فى كل الحالات:

- Unless you help me, I won't finish the work.
- Unless he were a doctor, he wouldn't save the patient.
- Unless he had found a fly in his soup, he wouldn't have complained to the manager.

- يمكن استخدام (In case of) فى حالة الشرط المثبت.

- In case of bad weather, the wedding will be held indoors.

- يمكن استخدام (but for - without) فى حالة الشرط المنفى.

- Without the firemen's efforts, the house would have been burnt.

- لاحظ استخدام in case بدون of.

فى حالة/ ربما (يتبعها جملة)

- Take this money in case you need it.

Extra Points

If بدائل

- يمكن استخدام (بشرط provided (that)/providing – on condition that
و(طالما as long as) بدلًا من (If) كالآتى:

- Provided you study harder, you will come first in the test.
- You can have my car as long as you have a driving licence.

- يمكن استخدام (Should) بدلًا من (If) فى الحالتين الأولى والثانية وبعدها الفاعل ثم المصدر:

- Should he receive my call, he will (would) come immediately.

- يمكن استخدام (Were) بدلًا من (If) فى الحالة الثانية فقط.

- If I were younger, I'd play football with you.
- Were I younger, I'd play football with you.

• إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسى فعلًا آخر غير (were) نستخدم (were) ثم الفاعل ثم (المصدر + to).

- If it rained, the match would be postponed.
- Were it to rain, the match would be postponed.

• يمكن أن نستخدم (Had) بدلًا من (If) فى الحالة الثالثة.

- If he had played well, he would have won.
- Had he played well, he would have won.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... I had been so tired, I might have realised what was happening.
   a) If b) Without c) In case of d) Unless
2. .... he had a calculator, he would have answered quickly.
   a) If b) Were c) Had d) Unless
3. .... him today, he would know what happened.
   a) If she meets b) Were she to meet
   c) Unless she met d) Had she met

4 .... he been cleverer, he wouldn't have made that silly mistake.
a) Should b) Hadn't c) Had d) If

5 He took some food with him .... there were no restaurants in the area.
a) in case b) if c) unless d) but for

6 .... your help, I would have failed.
a) In case of b) If c) Unless d) But for

7 .... he had enough money, he wouldn't buy his needs.
a) Without b) If c) Unless d) In case

8 Should he .... his friends, he would invite them to his birthday party.
a) meet b) meets c) met d) had met

9 .... this number with you in case you need it later.
a) Will keep b) keep c) You kept d) keep you

10 .... emergency, I will have to go to work on feasts.
a) In case b) Without c) If d) In case of



لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If I feel thirsty, I .... water at once.
a) drinks b) would drink c) drink d) drank

2 If you .... harder, you'd get higher marks.
a) worked b) work c) had worked d) will work

3 If I had had my mobile yesterday, I .... you.
a) would contact b) will contact
c) would have contacted d) contacted

4 If I hear any news, I .... you.
a) would phone b) phoned c) phone d) will phone

5 If we didn't have a car, we .... it difficult to get there in time.
a) would find b) will find c) may find d) would have found

6 If people lived on the moon, they .... tired and bored.
a) would have been b) would be c) will be d) are

7 If you press this switch, the computer .... on.
a) would come b) would have come c) comes d) came

8 If I .... money in the street, I would take it to the police.
a) found b) find c) had found d) will find

9 If the sun didn't give us heat and light, we ....
a) wouldn't die b) will die c) would die d) may die

10 Ali would act in the school play if he .... good at acting.
a) had been b) would be c) will be d) were

11 If she ...., she would have attended the party.
a) was invited b) had invited c) were invited d) had been invited

12 They would have run fast .... they had known they were late.
a) without b) unless c) if d) in case of

13 If Ramy .... the businessman, he wouldn't have got the job.
a) didn't meet b) hadn't met c) wouldn't meet d) hasn't met

14 If you .... any discussion group, the rules are more or less the same.
a) joined b) had joined c) will join d) join

15 If I .... with people I didn't know very well, I would never be rude to them.
a) were b) am c) had been d) will be

16 If I had known that you were joining the discussion group, I .... too. I love birds!
a) will join b) would join c) would have joined d) joined

17 If I need advice about my life, I usually .... to my mother.
a) would talk b) will talk c) had talked d) talk

18 If Magdi .... enough money, he would buy a new mobile phone.
a) has b) had c) had had d) will have

19 If Nihal watches horror films, she .... at night.
a) didn't sleep b) wouldn't sleep c) does not sleep d) hadn't slept

20 Ali .... the news if he wanted to know what was happening in the world.
a) would watch b) would have watched
c) will watch d) can watch

21 Nabila always .... her mother if she has too much to do.
a) will help b) won't help c) would help d) helps

22 If I .... hard, I will become really good at playing basketball.
a) will practise b) would practise c) practise d) practised

23 If my brother had a lot of money, he .... it all on music and clothes.
a) would spend b) will spend c) would have spent d) spends

24 Ehab .... fishing if he finishes all his work before the weekend.
a) will go b) had gone c) would go d) is going

25 Even if you .... no money, you can still have some fun.
a) would have b) are having c) had d) have

26 What .... if you had lost your phone yesterday?

a) will you do
b) had you done
c) would you have done
d) did you do

27 Mohammed .... everything about digital media if he read the article.

a) will know
b) would know
c) knew
d) would have known

28 If metal is heated, it ....

a) will expand
b) expand
c) would expand
d) expands

29 If he .... hard, he would have a lot of money.

a) works
b) worked
c) had worked
d) has worked

30 If they .... primitive in their work, they'd achieve better results.

a) can't
b) hadn't
c) weren't
d) didn't

31 If Hisham .... with us, he would have a good time.

a) would come
b) had come
c) would have come
d) came

32 If Hady read the article carefully, he .... understand it better.

a) would
b) will
c) won't
d) wouldn't

33 Were I .... hard, I would get high marks.

a) study
b) to study
c) studied
d) studying

34 If she hadn't driven so fast, she .... that accident.

a) wouldn't have
b) didn't have
c) would have had
d) wouldn't have had

35 I would have to pay for the vase, if I .... it.

a) had broken
b) would break
c) broke
d) was breaking

36 Your letter won't be delivered unless it .... the correct postage.

a) had
b) has
c) will have
d) had had

37 You must take an umbrella .... it rains.

a) in case
b) unless
c) in case of
d) without

38 You would have another chance, if you .... again and again.

a) try
b) tries
c) tried
d) had tried

39 .... they had much time, they would have studied better.

a) Were
b) Had
c) If
d) Have

40 .... hard work, she would have failed.

a) Unless
b) If
c) As long as
d) But for

41 If water .... to 100°C, it evaporates.

a) is boiled
b) boils
c) boiled
d) will boil

42 If the money, he had, ... enough, he would have bought that car.

a) been
b) had
c) had been
d) were

43 If he sold the five feddans, he would be rich and .... a new house.

a) bought
b) buy
c) will buy
d) buys

44 .... to the summer house, if you want to have some fresh air.
a) Go b) Going c) Will go d) Shall go

45 If he .... longer legs, he would have won yesterday's race.
a) had been b) were c) had d) had had

46 If I hadn't fallen ill and .... the interview, I might have got the job.
a) miss b) missed c) had missed d) would miss

47 If her dreams .... true, she would have been happy.
a) had come b) hadn't come c) had been come d) hadn't been come

48 .... running makes you tired, you can walk.
a) Unless b) Without c) In case of d) If

49 If he .... water in the freezer, it would have turned into ice.
a) has put b) put c) had put d) puts

50 If I .... taller, they would have taken me in the team yesterday.
a) had been b) were c) have been d) hadn't been

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I'm going home now because all the work ....
a) has been done b) will be done c) had been done d) are done

2 We will make a move as soon as the train ....
a) had stopped b) stopped c) will stop d) has stopped

3 Rameses II .... over ancient Egypt for more than fifty years.
a) was ruling b) ruled c) have ruled d) had ruled

4 When he .... on holiday, he lay on the beach every day.
a) was b) was being c) had been d) is

5 She let the children .... to play.
a) going out b) to go out c) go out d) that they went out

6 I wanted to know ....
a) how much did the car cost? b) how much the car costs?
c) how much the car cost. d) how much had the car cost.

7 After he .... at the airport, he realized that he had forgotten his passport at home.
a) had arrived b) was arriving c) has arrived d) arrived

8 Amira looks very tired. She .... the flat for a long time.
a) cleaned b) was cleaning c) has been cleaning d) had been cleaning

9 I suggest .... for them to answer before getting in touch with them again.
a) you to wait b) you waiting c) to wait d) you wait

10 My father can't afford .... a new car.
a) buy b) to buy c) buying d) to buying

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Giving warnings القيام بتحذيرات

- Be careful!
- If I were you, I wouldn't ....
- Mind you don't ....
- Don't do that or ....
- Make sure you are not ....
- Watch out!

Writing: An email Giving Warnings

Write an email to your friend telling him about what you think about the advantages and disadvantages of mobile phones.



From : Esmat
To : Aisha
Subject : Mobile phones

Dear Aisha,

Nowadays, the mobile phone plays an important role in our lives, which brings many benefits to us but also contains some disadvantages.

Generally, the mobile phone will bring about a lot of advantages. First of all, the mobile phone is considered the quickest means of communication in our daily life, we can contact easily with our friends and our relatives wherever by calling or sending messages. Second, the mobile phone is also a means of entertainment for people. We can listen to music and play games on mobile phones. Moreover, by using the latest apps for smartphones, we can access to the internet to watch films and check our profiles in social networks and update our status wherever we are. Finally, if we have a smartphone in hand, our studying becomes more effective such as look up dictionary, find out many sources of reference on the internet which is useful for studying.

On the other hand, the mobile phone has also many disadvantages. First, telephone user becomes addicted to their mobile phone if they depend on it. Moreover, the ability of human communication is limited if the mobile phone is present in some events such as class meetings or on the bus. The use of mobile phones too much will waste their time. It does not only affect study results, making students distracted but also it is a cause of disease of the eyes. Finally, we shouldn't use the mobile phone while we are driving because it can lead to traffic accidents.

Love,
Esmat

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. The advantages and the disadvantages of the internet.
2. How we can protect our children from the disadvantages of modern technology.

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Modern technology plays an important role in the way people communicate with each other. Actually, it has made the world like a small village.
2. In some countries, children are banned from using social networking sites until they are eighteen. Parents have to make sure of that.
3. Some governments block harmful sites to protect their citizens from the drawbacks of the internet sites.
4. Modern technology is a blessing if it is well used and it is a curse if it is misused. It is our responsibility to benefit from it and avoid its harms.
5. Egypt was the first country outside Europe to win the Men's Youth World Handball Championship in 2019. The team was honoured by the president.
6. The government is building one of the biggest solar power stations in Aswan. It is expected to produce about 90% of the electricity produced by the High Dam.

B) Translate into English:

١- تعمل شركات الكمبيوتر على تطوير برامج حماية الأطفال من التصفح غير الآمن للإنترنت وذلك لحمايتهم من أضرار المواقع المسيئة.

٢- هل توافق على وضع قوانين لمراقبة وحظر مواقع الإنترنت وصفحات التواصل الاجتماعى؟

٣- يختلف الناس فى نظرتهم لتطور الاتصالات فمنهم من يرى أنها تطور طبيعى ومنهم من يظن أن أضرارها تفوق مزاياها.

٤- يستغل المنتجون مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى فى الإعلان عن منتجاتهم بسبب جذبها للملايين من الناس.

٥- يجب أن يشارك المجتمع فى جهود تطوير المدارس وتزويدها بكل الوسائل الحديثة التى تجعلها مناسبة للتطور التكنولوجى الكبير.

٦- يعتقد الخبراء أن استخدام الشباب المفرط للتليفون المحمول يؤثر على صحتهم وممارستهم للهوايات المفيدة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

banned	ممنوع	drawbacks	عيوب
blessing	نعمة	efforts	جهود
block	يحجب	excessive	المفرط
browsing	التصفح	means	الوسائل
curse	لعنة	solar	شمسى



Test 6 Based on Unit 14

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Without the rescuers' efforts, many people ....
a) died b) are dying c) have died d) would have died

2 Many countries have made laws to ban smoking in .... places.
a) special b) general c) public d) empty

3 The trainer had to .... Munir from the basketball team as he isn't very fit for the match.
a) reward b) exclude c) award d) finance

4 If I had more time, I .... my friends in Dubai.
a) will visit b) would have visited c) would visit d) visited

5 The medical tests proved that the driver was drug .... and he was punished.
a) applied b) attained c) attacked d) addicted

6 If I feel tired, I .... to bed to relax. It's my habit.
a) go b) 'd go c) 'd have gone d) 'll go

7 I .... touch with my best friend whose family moved to Australia.
a) gained b) kept c) lost d) missed

8 If Heba .... here, she'd help me with the homework.
a) is b) were c) had been d) has been

9 Alexander the Great is believed to have .... over a huge empire.
a) drawn b) defeated c) conquered d) ruled

10 Had he not had enough money, he .... a car.
a) can't buy b) couldn't buy c) couldn't have bought d) can't have bought

11 The word "separation" is an antonym to the word ....
a) contact b) download c) type d) exclusion

12 .... I to study harder, I'd achieve my dream.
a) If b) Were c) Had d) Should

13 When people smoke cigarettes, their health ....
a) suffered b) suffers c) will suffer d) would suffer

14 If you .... your mind to a goal, you will eventually achieve it.
a) are setting b) had set c) sets d) set

15 If I inherited a billion dollars, I .... to the moon.
a) will travel b) would have travelled
c) would travel d) travelled

16 If you .... me you needed a ride, I would have left earlier.
a) had told b) told c) tell d) telling

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The moon orbits the Earth. When it orbits, it travels in a circle around the Earth. There is a force between the Earth and the moon called gravity. Because of gravity, larger objects pull smaller ones toward them. Earth is larger than the moon, so the Earth pulls on the moon. At the same time, the Earth is being pulled by the sun. The sun is larger than the Earth. The balance between those two "pulls" is what keeps the moon in orbit around the Earth. People say the moon shines. However, the moon does not actually have any light of its own. What we see as its light is really the sun's light reflecting off of the moon. As the moon orbits the Earth, the Earth orbits the sun. We see different amounts of light on the moon depending on its position. We call the changes in the moon's appearance Lunar phases. From one new moon to the next new moon is one complete lunar cycle.

It takes the moon between 27 and 28 days to complete an orbit around the Earth. The moon's orbit is measured from one new moon to the next new moon. It starts in the west and moves toward the east.

To complete one full orbit, the moon travels about 1,423,000 miles. The moon travels very fast. It moves at 2,288 miles per hour.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The moon orbits the Earth and the Earth orbits the sun because of ....

a) appearance
b) reflection
c) gravity
d) position

18 People are wrong when they think that ....

a) the Earth pulls the moon
b) the moon is smaller than the sun
c) the earth is pulled by the sun
d) the moon shines by itself

19 The two spheres which are being pulled by the force of gravity are ....

a) the moon and the sun
b) the Earth and the moon
c) the sun and the earth
d) the Earth and gravity

20 The antonym of the word "pull" is ....

a) push
b) appeal
c) affect
d) influence

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why does Earth pull on the moon instead of the other way around?

22 What's really happening when the moon is said to shine?

23 Which moves faster, your family car or the moon?

24 What are the two pulls that keep the moon in orbit around the Earth?

25 Translate into Arabic:

Mass media - represented in television, the radio and the press - have a vital effect on everyone. They form the public opinion of any nation.

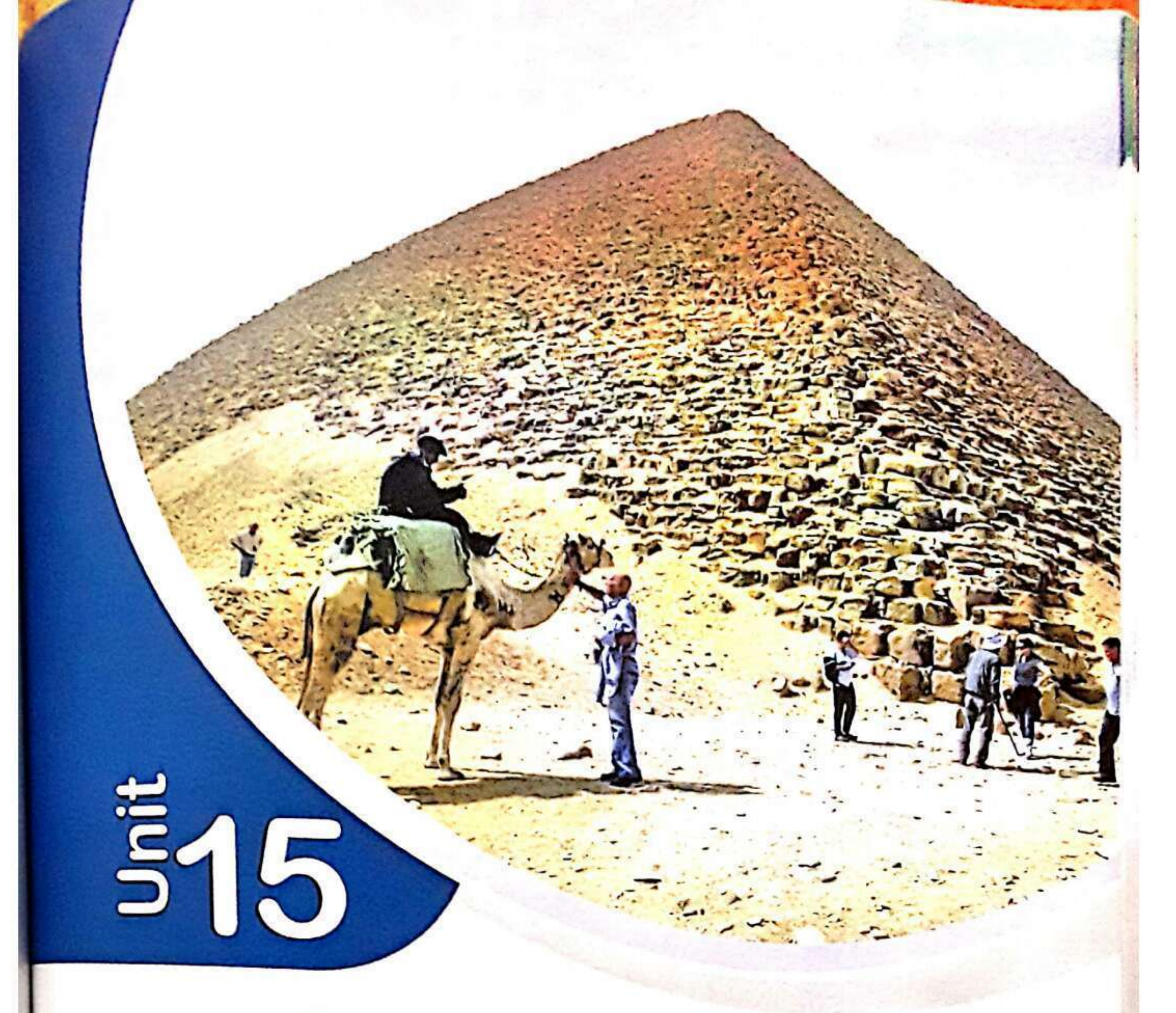
26 Translate into English:

- لو استطاع كل فرد القيام بدوره على أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر فى كل المجالات ولأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم فتنمية البلاد لا تتحقق دون الجهد والصبر.

27 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

The advantages and the disadvantages of the internet.





Unit 15

Tourism today

Objectives

Listening	: Listening to identify speakers and to interpret information
Grammar	: Present necessity and lack of necessity
Reading	: Reading for specific information, guessing the meanings of unknown words
Critical thinking	: Understanding the importance of tourism
Functions	: Using idioms; making compromises and coming to agreements
Writing	: Writing a formal email

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

accommodation (n)	إقامة	mass (n) (adj)	كتلة/ جماعي
block (v) (ed)	يسد/ يعوق	package tour (n)	رحلة جماعية
cathedral (n)	كاتدرائية/ كنيسة كبيرة	particular (adj)	خاص/ محدد
culture (n)	ثقافة	pretend (v) (ed)	يدّعي/ يتظاهر
cultural (adj)	ثقافي	reputation (n)	سمعة
employ (v) (ed)	يوظف	staff (n)	طاقم العمل
employer (n)	صاحب العمل	travel agent (n)	وكيل سياحي
employee (n)	موظف	visitor (n)	زائر
fixed (adj)	ثابت/ محدد	wear away (v)	يبلى (يؤدي إلى التآكل)/ يتآكل

Vocabulary On Listening

add (v) (ed)	يضيف	essential (adj)	ضروري
ancient (adj)	قديم/ أثري	organise (v) (d)	ينظم
arrange (v) (d)	يرتب	relaxing (adj)	مريح للأعصاب
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	sail (v) (ed)	يبحر
beach (n)	بلاج/ شاطئ ممهد	souvenir (n)	تذكار
customer (n)	زبون/ عميل	tourism (n)	سياحة
especially (adv)	بخاصة	tourist (n) (adj)	سائح/ سياحي
		travel agency (n)	شركة (سياحية/ سفريات)
		trip (n)	رحلة لغرض معين

Vocabulary On Reading

air travel (n)	السفر جوًا
article (n)	مقال
coast (n)	ساحل
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
crowded (adj)	مزدحم
currency	عملة
damage (v) (d) (n)	يتلف/ تلف
destination (n)	وجهة سفر
disadvantages (n)	عيوب
earner (n)	مصدر دخل
golf course (n)	ملعب جولف
holiday maker (n)	سائح/ قائم بإجازة
industry (n)	صناعة
industrial (adj)	صناعى
local (adj)	محلى
meal (n)	وجبة
the Mediterranean (n)	البحر المتوسط
ordinary (adj)	عادى
popular (adj)	مشهور/ محبوب
popularity (n)	شهرة
resort (n)	متجع/ مصيف
season (n)	فصل/ موسم سياحى
stone floor (n)	أرضية حجرية
traffic (n)	المرور

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

art (n)	فن
beliefs (n)	معتقدات
benefit (v) (ed) (n)	يستفيد/ فائدة
cleaners (n)	عمال نظافة
ecotourism (n)	السياحة البيئية
effect (n)	تأثير
affect (v) (ed)	يؤثر على
effective (adj)	مؤثر/ فعَّال
foreign (adj)	أجنبى
horse-riding (n)	الفروسية/ ركوب الخيل
interest (n)	اهتمام
involve (v) (d)	يشرك/ يتضمن
nearby (adj)	قريب
organisation (n)	مؤسسة/ منظمة
public transport (n)	النقل العام
share (v) (d)	يشارك
society (n)	مجتمع

Focus on Vocabulary

Word	Arabic	Definition
accommodation	الإقامة	a place to stay in
block	يسد / يعوق	stop or get in the way of something
cathedral	كاتدرائية	a large, important church
culture	ثقافة	the beliefs, behaviour, art and ideas of a society
employ	يوظف	give work to people
fixed	ثابت / محدد	arranged in advance and not able to be changed
include	يشمل / يتضمن	contain something as part of something else
mass	كتلة / جماعي	a large number grouped together
package tour	رحلة جماعية	holidays arranged by a travel company which include travel, accommodation and sometimes food for a fixed price
particular	خاص / محدد	special or important
pretend	يدَّعي / يتظاهر	behave as if something is true when it is not
reputation	سمعة	the opinion people have of someone
staff	طاقم العمل	a group of people who work for an organisation
travel agent	وكيل سياحي	someone whose job is to help people make travel arrangements
visitor	زائر	a person who visits a place or a person
wear away	يبلى (يؤدي إلى التآكل) / يتآكل	become damaged after repeated use

Expressions & Idioms

a five-star hotel	فندق خمس نجوم
as quickly as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن
at its best	فى أفضل صورة
do damage to	يسبب تلفًا لـ
for/ at a fixed price	بسعر ثابت
go horse-riding	يمارس الفروسية
go on visits with	يذهب فى زيارات مع
make ... formal	يجعله رسميًا
make money out of	يجنى مالًا من
make sure	يتأكد
take a trip to	يقوم برحلة إلى
take it easy	يسترخى/ يتمهل
value for money	قيمة مناسبة للنقود

Phrases & Prepositions

add ... to	يضيف .... لـ
arrange ... for	يرتب.... لـ
benefit from	يستفيد من
compared to	مقارنة بـ
effect on	تأثير على
essential for	ضرورى لـ
sail past	يبحر مارًّا بـ

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
block	يعوق	hinder	unblock يسهل/ يزيل العوائق
employ	يوظف	hire	fire يفصل من العمل
fixed	ثابت/ محدد	settled	flexible مرن
pretend	يَدَّعِى/ يتظاهر	assume	deny ينكر
reputation	سمعة	fame	unimportance/ shame عدم أهمية/ خزى
arrange	يرتب	organise	disorganise يفسد/ يخل بنظام
essential	ضرورى	necessary	optional اختيارى/ عارض
crowded	مزدحم	busy	empty فارغ
ordinary	عادى	common	strange غريب

Notes on Vocabulary

souvenir | memory | present | prize

souvenir — تذكار (شيء مادى)
- Tourists always buy souvenirs from Khan el-Khalili.

memory — ذاكرة/ ذكرى (شيء معنوى)
- My grandfather has problems with his memory. He is over 70.
- We have pleasant memories of our holiday in Luxor and Aswan.

present — هدية
- Mary got a lot of presents on her last birthday.

prize — جائزة (فى مسابقة/ منافسة)
- The child was given a prize for the project he did at school.

coast | shore | beach | bank

coast — ساحل (مساحة من اليابسة قريبة من البحر)
- We set up many tourist villages along the north coast of the Red Sea.

shore — شاطئ (جزء من اليابسة محاذٍ لحافة البحر)
- The ship reached the shore after a long voyage.

beach — بلاج (شاطئ ممهد)
- People like to sit relaxed under umbrellas on the beach.

bank — ضفة (نهر أو بحيرة)
- The hotel is located on the river bank.

wear (wore - worn)

wear away	يتآكل/ يَبلَى	wear out	يبلى ولا يصلح للاستخدام
wear off	يختفى أثره أو يزول بالتدريج	wear down	ينهك/ يهزم/ يُتلف
wear on	(يمر ببطء) للوقت		

1. The floor of the office wore away as it was very old.
2. He will be OK after the effect of the drug wears off.
3. I feel bored, the time wears on.
4. My shirt wore out, it can't be used again.
5. In the chess game I wore down Nader and beat him.

a five-star hotel

(لاحظ استخدام صيغة المفرد star) بسبب استخدامها كصفة للاسم بعدها مثل التعبيرات التالية:

- a two-week holiday — إجازة يومين
- a five-star hotel — فندق خمسة نجوم
- car factories — مصانع سيارات

currency **note** **coin**

currency — عملة (بدون تحديد شكل)
- US dollars are considered common currency in international trade.

note — عملة ورقية
- Banks only exchange notes and traveller's cheques.

coin — عملة معدنية
- The referee tossed a coin to see who should start the match with.

share **divide**

share

١- يشترك (فى شىء) بدون تقسيم
٢- يتشارك/ يشارك (شىء - رأى - شعور)

- My brother shares a room with one of his colleagues at university.
- We shared the pizza between the four of us.

divide

١- يقسم/ ينقسم
٢- يقسم على رقم (فى الرياضيات)

- The children were divided into three teams.
- Thirty divided by six is five.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Loss of .... is a natural part of old age.
   a) life b) souvenir c) monument d) memory
2. In the second half, Al Ahli team wore .... the other team and won the match.
   a) off b) down c) on d) out
3. After the Second World War, Germany was .... into two separate countries.
   a) divided b) shared c) united d) built

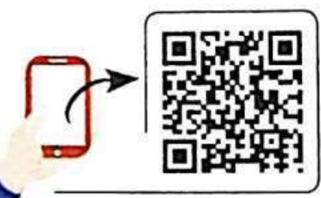
4 The euro is the single .... of countries in the European Union.
a) note b) coin c) currency d) form

5 The boy jumped in and swam to the opposite .... of the small lake.
a) coast b) bank c) beach d) harbour

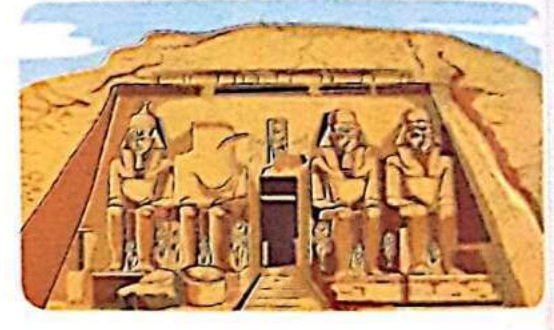
6 It was hard work and, as the day wore ...., I became more and more tired.
a) off b) away c) on d) out

7 I'll keep this photo as a .... of my trip to Luxor.
a) souvenir b) memory c) note d) notice

8 If children play football for too long, they will wear .... the grass.
a) off b) out c) on d) away



Listening Text



Speaker 1:

I'm here for a week with my wife and children. I've wanted to come here since I learnt about Egypt at school. We're staying near Cairo and while we're here, we're going to see the Pyramids at Giza, the Great Sphinx and other ancient sites. My children have to study ancient history at school next year, so this trip will be very interesting for them. We must buy souvenirs[1] for our friends while we're here, and the children are hoping to spend a day or two on the beach.

Speaker 2:

I'm the manager of a travel agency in Alexandria. I arrange accommodation[2] and trips for foreign visitors to Egypt. Of course, some times of the year are busier than others for us. There are parts of the year when my staff[3] and I have to work twelve hours a day for six days a week, then other times are quieter, which means that we don't have to work such long hours. I enjoy my job - especially when customers say that they've enjoyed the trips we've organised. Sometimes I pretend[4] to be a tourist and go on the trips myself, because we must always make sure that the customers are getting value for money[5]. It is essential for our reputation[6] that we look after tourists well. We mustn't forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.

(1) تذكارات سياحية
(2) إقامة
(3) طاقم العمل
(4) يتظاهر
(5) قيمة مناسبة للنقود
(6) سمعة

Speaker 3:

I'm here with my sister – we're sailing down the Nile from Luxor to Aswan. It's been a fantastic journey so far. The views from the boat are wonderful – we've learnt a lot about the life and culture(7) of Egyptian people. We've sailed past the temples of Edfu and Kom Ombo. We're finding it very interesting, but also relaxing. It's a real change from our life in London. For example, we don't need to get up or go to bed at particular times – we can just take it easy(8). We have to be back in Cairo on Friday in time to catch our flight back to England.

ثقافة (7)
يسترخي (8)

Reading Text

Tourism today

People have visited Egypt ever since Greek and Roman times, but modern tourism began when an Englishman, Thomas Cook, arranged the first package tour(1) in 1841. Package tours are holidays arranged by a travel company which include travel, accommodation and sometimes food for a fixed(2) price.



Mass(3) tourism first became popular in the 1960s, when air travel became cheaper, and today tourism is a huge business. Millions of tourists are carried by air to destinations all over the world. Countries on the Mediterranean coast attract millions of tourists every summer!

Countries make a lot of money out of tourism, but there are also disadvantages. For example, about one hundred people visit Notre Dame cathedral(4) in Paris every minute. Their feet wear away(5) the stone floors. The buses waiting for the tourists produce pollution that damages the outside of the building.

During the tourist season, many of the world's great cities are very difficult to live in. Try shopping in Prague or Florence in the middle of summer! Tourists with cameras block(6) your way. Shopping is impossible!

For Egypt, tourism is the second most important earner of foreign currency after oil. The tourist industry employs(7) thousands of people such as travel agents, hotel staff and building workers. If more tourists visit in the future, new hotels and roads will have to be built and new parks and resorts(8) will need to be planned.

رحلة جماعية (1)
محدد/ ثابت (2)
جماعي (3)
كاتدرائية (4)
يبلي (5)
يسد/ يعوق (6)
يوظف (7)
منتجعات/ مصايف (8)

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

1 The children are hoping to spend a day or two on the beach.

الفعل hope لا يستخدم فى الاستمرار إلا فى حالة أن الأمل يراود الشخص لفترة وتنقضى ولا ينساه طوال هذه الفترة.

2 Some times of the year are busier than others for us ..... then other times are quieter.

عند المقارنة بين اثنين نضيف er للصفة القصيرة و than وإذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بـ y تقلب إلى ier.

3 We've learnt a lot about the life and culture of the Egyptian people.

There is no life on Mars.

تستخدم كلمة life للحياة عمومًا.

He is leading a happy life in his new villa.

تستخدم كلمة a life لنوع معين من الحياة.

The life and culture of the Egyptian people.

تستخدم كلمة the life لحياة شخص معين أو مجموعة معينة

4 Package tours include travel, accommodation and sometimes food for a fixed price.

تعنى كلمة package الرحلة الجماعية بسـعر ثابت مثل رحلات الحج والعمرة وكلمة a fixed price يأتى قبلها إما for وإما at.

5 New hotels and roads will have to be built and new parks and resorts will need to be planned.

لاحظ استخدام be + P.P. كمبنى للمجهول بعد will have to و will need to.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The first thing I think about when I go on holiday is to arrange for .... , a place to live in.
a) education b) accommodation c) foundation d) fountain

2 Sitting on the beach under an umbrella is really .... in summer vacations.
a) tiring b) annoying c) exhausting d) relaxing

3 For no .... reason, my friend left his job at the bank.
a) popular b) public c) particular d) general

4 Two members of the .... will accompany the students on the school trip.
a) staff b) cliff c) stuff d) stiff

5 Some countries depend on .... because it is very important for their national income.
a) tours b) culture c) tourism d) terrorism

6 STEM schools in Egypt a very good .... as they have highly-skilled teachers.
a) infection b) destination c) invitation d) reputation

7 The thieves got into the house by .... they worked for the electricity company.
a) attending b) preventing c) pretending d) protecting

8 Tourism industry can .... millions of people such as workers, hotel staff and travel agents.
a) employ b) rent c) imply d) apply

9 .... tourism as we know it today first became popular in the 1960s.
a) Mass b) Class c) Brass d) Press

10 A fallen tree was .... our way to school, so we were late.
a) repairing b) dividing c) splitting d) blocking

11 The art, beliefs, behaviour and ideas of a particular society or group of people are their ....
a) industry b) culture c) agriculture d) commerce

12 We hope that the new government will do its best for citizens to enjoy a .... price for food.
a) fitted b) mixed c) fixed d) twisted

13 The steps leading up to the old temple at Petra, in Jordan, have been .... by many visitors over hundreds of years.
a) destroyed b) worn away c) broken d) tired

14 You don't have to pay for your flights – they're .... in the price of your holiday.
a) consisted b) included c) contained d) enclosed

15 The Red Sea .... is famous for its fish, corals and beautiful wildlife.
a) bank b) beach c) coast d) ocean

16 It is .... that my uncle wears his glasses when he drives – he can hardly see without them!
a) essential b) unwise c) silly d) interesting

17 The family house doubled in .... over only two years.
a) virtue b) service c) curve d) value

18 Different countries use different kinds of money, which are called ....
a) coins b) currencies c) dollars d) notes

19 Sharm El-Sheikh is a popular .... for tourists who enjoy diving and water sports.
a) sanitation b) destination c) circulation d) generation

20 The .... of mobile phones and modern devices has grown in the last five years.
a) fertility b) popularity c) security d) immunity

21 Oil and natural gas are the biggest export .... in Saudi Arabia.
a) owner b) router c) earner d) dealer

22 Tourists go to Khan el-Khalili to buy .... for their friends.
a) memories b) souvenirs c) prizes d) icebergs

23 We paid little money for this car. It's really value .... money.
a) of b) for c) in d) about

24 A .... tour is a holiday arranged by a company for a fixed price that includes your hotel and travel.
a) backache b) wreckage c) package d) necklace

25 Compared .... our other products, ours are much cheaper.
a) in b) for c) to d) from

26 The .... are the people who go on tours to enjoy themselves.
a) money makers b) pop makers c) troublemakers d) holiday makers

27 None of us are close friends, but we all .... an interest in sport.
a) share b) divide c) split d) spilt

28 The .... is the sandy part of the shore where people sit under umbrellas.
a) coast b) beach c) bank d) harbour

29 People usually go to a .... agency to book their holidays.
a) transport b) transplant c) police d) travel

30 The supermarket was so crowded with .... that I couldn't get everything I wanted.
a) guests b) customers c) hosts d) passengers

31 Tourism enables a lot of countries to .... a lot of money.
a) make b) win c) lose d) capture

32 We stayed at a five-.................. hotel during our journey in Paris.
a) star b) stars c) star's d) stars'

33 Your style of writing makes it easy even for .... people to understand.
a) ordinary b) sophisticated c) intelligent d) cultured

34 You should .... your work in order to be successful.
a) recognise b) specialise c) socialise d) organise

35 Some people prefer to use .... transport rather than private cars.
a) general b) national c) public d) international.

36 .... helps local people and doesn't damage the environment.
a) Curative tourism b) Ecotourism c) Mass tourism d) Package tourism

37 They spent a month at a fashionable ski .... in Switzerland.
a) resources b) resourceful c) resort d) way

38 Egyptian monuments .... millions of tourists every year.
a) admire b) attract c) attack d) attend

39 The government is giving great care to .... development providing more facilities to factory owners.
a) agricultural b) cultural c) farming d) industrial

10 This cinema is popular with young people as it often shows .... films made in Hollywood.
a) local b) foreign c) common d) bizarre

11 The quiz test .... answering questions about a photograph.
a) consists b) encloses c) involves d) reports

12 I visit my grandparents very often because they live in a .... village.
a) remote b) nearby c) strange d) lonely

13 My doctor always advises me to .... it easy when I feel nervous.
a) take b) make c) do d) give

14 We arranged .... a car to collect us from the airport.
a) in b) at c) on d) for

15 My brother is studying astronomy because he has always had a/an .... in it.
a) exercise b) interest c) practice d) hatred

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My best friend and I live on the same .... of flats.
a) mass b) block c) street d) department

2 Every company management has its own special ....
a) civilisation b) scent c) industry d) culture

3 Arab countries hope to reach a/an .... with other European countries on the question of immigration.
a) accommodation b) stay c) recommendation d) dispute

4 The girl was busily .... in colouring her drawings, so she couldn't watch the film.
a) hired b) managed c) employed d) rented

5 The road was closed by a big .... of people who protested against the new factory.
a) block b) mass c) mess d) means

6 The children sang songs around a .... campfire in their garden.
a) pretend b) protect c) accept d) intensive

7 The little boy .... on the bottom step as it was partly broken.
a) flew b) tripped c) broke d) stepped

8 Mother is very .... about the kitchen – everything has to be perfectly clean and in its place.
a) secret b) private c) general d) particular

9 The small boat was .... near the rocks.
a) blocked b) coasted c) beached d) honoured

10 The verb "disorganise" is an antonym to the verb "................".
a) damage b) arrange c) attract d) attack



Grammar

1) Necessity 2) Lack of necessity 3) Prohibition



1 Necessity الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
have to	It's necessary for ... to + Inf.	had to	It was necessary for ... to + Inf.	will have to	It will be necessary for ... to + Inf.
has to					
must					
have got to		no past			
has got to					
need to/needs to		needed to		will need to	

- It is necessary for all students to study hard.
- All students must/have to/have got to/need to study hard.
- It was necessary for him to visit Alex.
- He had to visit Alex. ضرورة فى الماضى وتم فعلها.
- It will be necessary for the government to build more houses for youth.
- The government will have to build more houses for youth.

الفرق بين must/ have to

تفيد must الضرورة الشخصية (ظروف شخصية تضطره لذلك) والشخص يكون موافقًا لهذه الضرورة وراضيًا عنها.
وتفيد have to ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لديك اختيار فى فعلها فى الحاضر أو المستقبل.

- I have to wear a uniform during my work hours.
- I must visit Ramy on Saturday as I promised him.



Must

1 strong advice: نصيحة قوية:

- You must wash your hands before you eat.
- You mustn't make noise as your father is asleep (sleeping).

2 a warm invitation: دعوة حارة :

- You must come and see us at the weekend.

3 a strong reminder to ourselves: لنذكر أنفسنا بضرورة عمل شىء:

- We must buy souvenirs for our friends here.
- We mustn't forget that tourism is important.

4 laws للقانون ويجب التفرقة بينها وبين have to التى تفيد الضرورة الخارجية:

- Drivers must stop when the traffic light is red.
- The traffic light is red. You have to stop.

فى الجملة الأولى نتحدث عن القانون العام الذى يلتزم به جميع الناس؛ لذلك استخدمنا كلمة drivers، وفى الجملة الثانية نتحدث عن ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج فى موقف معين، واستخدمنا الضمير You ولم نتحدث عن القانون ذاته.

ملحوظة نستخدم need to للأحداث التى يمكن أن تكون ضرورية أو غير ضرورية.

- Hassan needs to go to the bank after he finishes work.

2 Lack of necessity عدم الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
don't have to doesn't have to needn't (to بدون) don't/doesn't need to	It isn't necessary for ... to + Inf.	didn't have to لم يكن ضرورى فعل شىء فلم نفعله needn't have + P.P لم يكن ضرورى فعل شىء ولكن تم فعله didn't need to	It wasn't necessary for ... to + Inf.	won't have to won't need to	It won't be necessary for ... to + Inf.

- It isn't necessary for her to buy more dresses.
- She doesn't have to/needn't/doesn't need to buy more dresses.
- It wasn't necessary for me to travel abroad.
- I didn't have to travel abroad. يكن واجبًا فلم أفعل.
- I needn't have travelled abroad. يكن واجبًا ولكنى فعلت.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... go shopping with us, you can stay at home if you want.
   a) needn't b) mustn't c) must d) have to
2. You .... see a doctor. You look ill.
   a) needn't b) must c) had to d) shouldn't
3. I .... get to school before 8:30.
   a) must b) needn't c) should d) have to
4. You .... show your passport when you visit another country.
   a) must b) needn't c) have to d) had to
5. My father .... work today because it is a holiday.
   a) must b) doesn't have to c) has to d) had to
6. You .... wash these fruits. I've already washed them.
   a) don't have to b) mustn't c) don't have d) need to
7. She .... take a taxi yesterday as it was raining heavily.
   a) must b) doesn't have to c) had to d) needn't
8. I .... wash my hands before eating. It's very important.
   a) might b) must c) needn't d) had to
9. Do you .... wear those shoes to work? Are they part of the dress code?
   a) should b) need c) must d) have to
10. Yusuf and Hani .... be home by eight. That's a family rule.
   a) might b) has to c) have to d) should



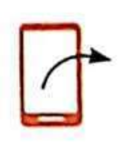
3 Prohibition

المنع/الحظر/التحريم

It's	banned forbidden prohibited not allowed	to park here.

Parking is	banned forbidden prohibited not allowed	here.

- You mustn't (can't) park here.
- You aren't allowed to park here.
- You are forbidden from parking here.




لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We .... work such long hours. We can complete our work tomorrow.
   a) need to b) must c) needn't d) shouldn't
2. You .... eat lots of fresh vegetables because they're good for you.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) must
3. I .... take this book back to the library or I'll get a fine.
   a) mustn't b) have got to c) can't d) needn't
4. The flight is at 6 in the morning, so we .... get up very early.
   a) have to b) must not c) needn't d) had to
5. I .... arrive at work at 9 sharp. My boss is very strict.
   a) must b) needn't c) have to d) mustn't
6. We .... call for the doctor when my father fainted last night.
   a) have to b) will have to c) needn't d) had to
7. We .... give him our answer today or we'll lose out on the contract.
   a) needn't b) have to c) shouldn't d) don't have to
8. You .... phone me at work. We aren't allowed to receive personal calls.
   a) mustn't b) have to c) need to d) needn't
9. They .... see us talking or they'll suspect something.
   a) mustn't b) had to c) didn't have to d) can't
10. You .... come if you don't want to.
    a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) will have to
11. We .... finish now as somebody else needs this room.
    a) needn't b) have got to c) don't have to d) can't

12 You .... come to see us at the weekend. We miss you so much.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) must

13 We .... leave now. The train leaves in five minutes.
a) needn't b) need to c) don't need to d) shouldn't

14 We .... get up or go to bed at particular times on holidays.
a) need to b) must c) needn't d) shouldn't

15 Gamal couldn't repair his car, so he .... rent one to travel to his village last week.
a) has to b) had to c) must d) needn't

16 Most school children in Britain .... wear a school uniform.
a) must b) needn't c) shouldn't d) have to

17 My children .... study ancient history at school next year.
a) have to b) must c) needn't d) should

18 We .... buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.
a) mustn't b) must c) had to d) didn't have to

19 My staff and I .... work 12 hours a day for six days a week.
a) mustn't b) need c) doesn't have to d) have to

20 I .... get up very early on school days.
a) must b) have to c) needn't d) don't have to

21 In some countries, children .... wear a school uniform.
a) has to b) mustn't c) don't need to d) doesn't need to

22 You .... drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.
a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to

23 You .... spend too much money. You'll want some for your holidays.
a) may not b) needn't c) can't d) mustn't

24 You .... take that book back to the library yet. You can keep it for another week.
a) have to b) should c) don't need to d) can

25 You .... pass your exams to go to university.
a) can b) needn't c) may d) have to

26 I really .... phone Mazen. I promised I'd phone him as soon as I had any news.
a) must b) have to c) doesn't need to d) needn't

27 You .... take this train. There's another one in ten minutes.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) have to

28 I want to go to university. I .... apply before the end of the week.
a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) need to d) had to

29 You .... buy that book. You can borrow mine.
a) needn't b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) can't

31 You .... speak so loudly on your mobile phone. It's very annoying.
a) needn't b) should c) don't have to d) mustn't

32 We .... give our homework to the teacher until next week.
a) had to b) mustn't c) don't have to d) were to

33 My grandfather .... work six days a week when he was young.
a) doesn't have to b) needn't c) has to d) had to

34 Drivers .... hold a valid driving licence when operating a motor vehicle.
a) must b) doesn't need to c) need to d) have to

35 We .... forget to take the chicken out of the freezer.
a) don't have to b) haven't to c) mustn't d) don't need to

36 You .... phone him because I have already talked to him.
a) don't have to b) have to c) mustn't d) had to

37 You .... raise your voice. We can hear you well.
a) have to b) must c) mustn't d) needn't

38 We .... to go to school tomorrow. It is a public holiday.
a) could b) don't have c) need d) mustn't

39 We .... to buy any tomatoes. There are lots of them in the fridge.
a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) don't need

40 You can order your plane tickets online, you .... use a travel agent.
a) don't have to b) mustn't c) need to d) don't need

41 You .... finish that report tonight if you are too tired.
a) need to b) must c) needn't d) shouldn't

42 We bought much sugar, so I .... buy sugar yesterday.
a) needn't b) didn't have to c) don't have to d) mustn't

43 What a state my shoes are in! They .... repairing.
a) must b) need c) have to d) are

44 Do you know if we .... have visas to visit Sudan?
a) don't need b) must c) have to d) need

45 When I saw the new car, I knew I .... it.
a) had to buy b) must have bought c) need to buy d) can buy

46 You .... clever if you answer all these questions.
a) have to be b) needn't be c) can't be d) must be

47 Fahmy is not here. He .... leave early.
a) must b) needs to c) has to d) had to

48 There was only one way to the hotel, so I .... it.
a) have to take b) needn't have taken c) must have taken d) had to take

49 What does Ali .... do to get a visa to Canada?
a) must b) have to c) has to d) need

49 I .... all these shirts, but I did.
a) must have bought b) didn't have to buy c) needn't have bought d) should have bought

50 Ali is a clever doctor. He .... a brilliant student.
a) must have been b) needs to be c) must be d) has to be

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It was such a surprise .... Salah playing in the final.
a) saw b) to see c) be seeing d) see

2 They spoke quietly .... wake up the children.
a) to avoid b) for fear c) in order not d) so as not to

3 Feta cheese .... in Greece. It's very popular there.
a) is produced b) produces c) produced d) is producing

4 Would you mind .... me £5 until tomorrow?
a) lend b) to lend c) lending d) lends

5 That was a delicious meal. You cook very ....
a) best b) well c) better d) good

6 Samy was acting .... he was the manager.
a) how b) in the way c) the same way d) as though

7 The pancakes were made .... flour, eggs and milk.
a) with b) by c) like d) as

8 She likes to go ice-skating .... the winter.
a) as b) when c) during d) while

9 .... we get up on time, we could catch the early train to Luxor.
a) What if b) Providing c) Unless d) Otherwise

10 Aml said she would go shopping the .... day.
a) before b) past c) following d) after

Communication Skills

مراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Making compromises and coming to an agreement القيام بتسويات والتوصل إلى اتفاق

- I'd prefer to go to (Sharm), but I'm happy to go to (the North Coast) instead.
- I'd like to go to (Sharm), but it is probably better to go to (the North Coast).
- Do we all agree? So we're going to (the North Coast).
- That's good – We all agree.

Writing: A formal email

Write a reply to the following email.



To : ecotours@help.com
Subject : holiday@help.com
Hi Ecotours,
I got your name from one of my friends who's been on one of your trips. I want a holiday in your country which won't do any damage to the environment. I'm really also interested in your culture and want to find out about how people live in Egypt. I'm probably going to come next summer.
Send me some information as quickly as possible. I can't wait to hear from you.
Bye,
Pete Barton

Reply:

To : pete Barton@help.com
From : ecotours@help.com
Subject : Replying to your request Phones
Dear Pete,
We have received your e-mail and we would like to thank you for your interest in our company's tours. We have lots of tours to visit Egypt. If you are interested in places near the sea, we have tours in Sharm El Sheikh, Hurghada and Dahab. You can enjoy the views, fine weather and water sports. There are also tours to ancient places in Cairo such as the Pyramids and ancient places in Luxor and Aswan. There is much more information about our tours in Egypt.
We hope to hear from you soon.
Bye,
Ecotours

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. The role of the Egyptian people in encouraging tourism.
2. The ancient monuments are the greatest tourist attraction in Egypt.

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Tourism is a huge industry that can add to a country's national income. Therefore, Egypt has taken different measures to attract as many tourists as possible.
2. It is believed that tourism can encourage understanding and cooperation among different nations and cultures.

3. Tourists in Egypt enjoy safari trips as they spend their time in natural places and deserts. These trips are great attractions to them.
4. Travelling is a way to broaden our horizons and get people accustomed to other cultures. It is really useful for the old and the young.
5. Due to passive modern ways of entertainment such as the TV and the internet, young people lack physical fitness and body flexibility.
6. The political crises in the Middle East have a big effect on other parts of the world. Illegal immigration is one of their basic consequences.

B) Translate into English:

تهتم وزارة الآثار بإقامة المعارض للآثار المصرية بالخارج لتشجيع السياح على زيارة مصر.
إن بناء دولة كبيرة ليس سهلًا بل هو قضية صعبة تتطلب جهود كل المواطنين المخلصين.
لن تزدهر السياحة ما لم نقضى على الإرهاب ولذلك تدعو مصر إلى التعايش السلمى والتسامح.
يعتبر اهتمام الشباب بأفلام العنف ظاهرة تستحق اهتمام كل علماء الاجتماع والمفكرين لمحاولة إيجاد الحلول لها.
اهتمت كل دول العالم بحريق غابات الأمازون فى البرازيل لأنها جزء من الغابات الاستوائية التى تسمى «رئة الأرض».
يؤدى ارتفاع الأسعار إلى كثير من المشـكلات الأسرية فمتطلبات الأسرة الأساسية أصبحت تمثل عبئًا كبيرًا على رب الأسرة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

accustomed to	معتاد على	horizons	أفق
attractions	عوامل جذب	illegal	غير شرعى
broaden	يوسع	immigration	هجرة
cause	قضية	measures	إجراءات
consequences	عواقب	passive	سلبى
crises	أزمات	peaceful co-existence	التعايش السلمى
fairs	المعارض	phenomenon	ظاهرة
flexibility	مرونة	requirements	متطلبات



Test 7 Based on Unit 15

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 .... means the beliefs, behaviour, art and ideas of a society.
a) Culture b) Architecture c) Agriculture d) Manufacture

2 This hotel has got good .... because of the good service provided.
a) operation b) reputation c) corporation d) population

3 When something is good .... for money, it is high quality considering the price.
a) volume b) value c) vice d) vote



4 The police .... off the street because of the fire in the tower.
a) damaged b) closed c) established d) blocked

5 At the top of the hill, I switched off the engine and we just .... down the other side.
a) crashed b) damaged c) coasted d) parked

6 You have to help me – you're my last ....
a) resort b) goal c) beach d) method

7 I .... see the head teacher. I want to discuss something with her.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) must d) out

8 If you wish to become a doctor, you .... study medicine.
a) have to b) don't need to c) mustn't d) need

9 Before you buy a house, you .... consider all the costs.
a) needn't b) have got c) don't have to d) need to

10 I .... visit my uncle as he was very ill.
a) must b) had to c) don't have to d) need to

11 I .... go to school yesterday as it was a holiday.
a) have to b) should have gone c) didn't need to d) must

12 Marwan is .... athletic of all my brothers.
a) the least b) the less c) less d) less than

13 Teachers .... wear suits for work, but their clothes must be neat and clean.
a) must b) have to c) mustn't d) needn't

14 Students .... use their mobile phones during the lessons.
a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) needn't

15 The monitors .... be cleaned before leaving every night. That's number 1 rule.
a) have to b) needn't c) don't need d) mustn't

16 I got a fine for speeding and I .... pay 500 pounds immediately.
a) must b) have to c) had to d) needn't

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the wild, it often comes down to a predator and prey. There is the hunter and there is the hunted. Organisms want to stay alive. They hide or escape from animals who would like to eat them. So how do they do it? They adapt to their environment.

One very helpful adaptation is called camouflage. You may have been surprised at some time by an animal that used camouflage. It blended into its surroundings so well that you nearly missed seeing it. Its colouring, markings or other physical features allowed it to blend in to the area around it.

Animals use camouflage to fool a predator. The hidden animal is not seen when a predator scans an area looking for food. Wild goats, for example, have coats that make them look invisible among rocks. A baby giraffe's coat helps it hide among the grass and trees. A chameleon is a lizard that will change colours depending on the surface it is on.

Camouflage often works the other way around, too. Predators can use camouflage to trap their prey. A predator can attack unexpectedly an animal if it wants to eat. The prey animal doesn't see danger because the predator blends into the habitat. A leopard's spotted coat helps it blend in to the background and sneak up on its prey.

Another popular adaptation is mimicry. Mimicry is when an animal has the physical characteristics that makes it look like another animal or a plant. Some moths look like a wasp. Predators that don't like wasps will think the moth is a wasp and not eat it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Camouflage often works to help ....
a) the prey b) the predator c) the prey and the predator d) the wasp

18 What helps the animal to blend in to the area around it is its ....
a) physical features b) size and strength
c) intelligence and wisdom d) fear from the predator

19 If a chameleon was on a green leaf, what colour do you think it would be?
a) Brown. b) Blue. c) Yellow. d) Green.

20 When animals want to look like something a predator doesn't want to eat, they use ....
a) camouflage b) mimicry c) wasps d) moths

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What is the function of camouflage in the wild?

22 What's the difference between camouflage and mimicry?

23 If you were a wild animal, would you rather have the ability to mimic another animal or the ability to camouflage yourself? Why?

24 Give evidence that camouflage can help people, too.

25 Translate into Arabic:

Opposing terrorism has been tried by many countries however; terrorists are still getting support by various organisations to achieve their goals in many countries.

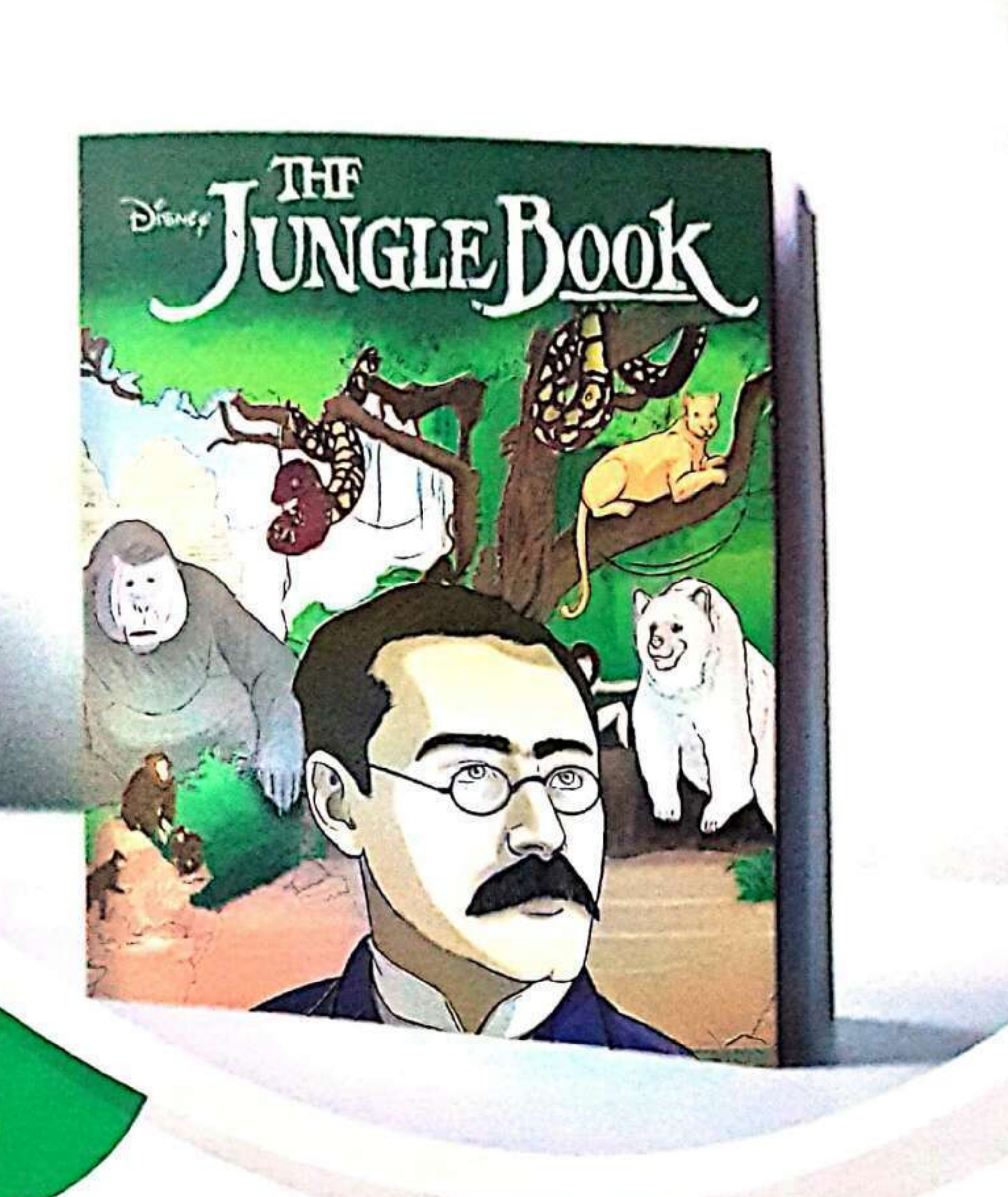
26 Translate into English:

- تشتهر مصر بكثير من أماكن الجذب السياحى التى لو أحسنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أغنى الدول بسبب العملة الصعبة التى يمكن أن تجلبها.

27 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

The role of the Egyptian people in encouraging tourism.





unit 16

Rudyard Kipling: *If*

Objectives

Listening	: Listening for gist; listening for detail
Grammar	: Participle clauses
Reading	: Reading for gist; reading for specific information
Critical thinking	: Becoming a successful person
Functions	: Talking about dreams and ideals
Writing	: Writing about a famous poet

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary and Expressions

Word	Meaning
aim (n) (v) (ed)	هدف/ يهدف
bear (v)	يتحمل
deal in (v) dealt	يتعامل/ يتاجر في
foe (n)	عدو/ خصم
give way to (v)	يسمح لـ
grow up (v)	ينمو/ ينضج
impostor (n)	نصاب/ محتال
inspiring (adj)	مُلهم
inspiration (n)	إلهام/ وحي
keep your head	تحافظ على هدوئك
lose your head	تفقد أعصابك
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/ يحث
knave (n)	وغد/ محتال
stoop (v) (ed)	يمشي متمايلاً/ يتنازل/ يخضع
twisted (adj)	ملتوٍ/ متغير المعنى
unforgiving (adj)	قاسي القلب
virtue (n)	فضيلة
worth (adj) (n)	يساوي/ مستحق/ قيمة
worthless (adj)	ع/ بلا قيمة
worn-out (adj)	تالف/ بال
make allowance for	يلتمس العذر/ يتساهل مع
the common touch (n)	الشعور العام (التعامل بود مع عامة الناس)

Vocabulary on Listening

Word	Meaning
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ ينجز
achievement (n)	إنجاز
adult (n)	بالغ/ راشد
amount (n)	كمية/ مقدار
author (n)	مؤلف
countryside (n)	الريف
decide (v) (d)	يقرر
decision (n)	قرار
develop (v) (ed)	يطور
development (n)	تنمية/ تطور
editor (n)	محرر/ رئيس التحرير
jungle (n)	غابة
later (adv)	فيما بعد
local (adj)	محلي
nature (n)	الطبيعة
natural (adj)	طبيعي
poem (n)	قصيدة
poet (n)	شاعر
return (v) (ed)	يرجع/ يعود
successful (adj)	ناجح

Vocabulary On Reading

blame (v) (d)	يلوم
count (v) (ed)	يعد/ يعتمد
crowd (n)	جمهور
disaster (n)	كارثة
doubt (v) (ed) (n)	يشك/ شك
fill (v) (ed)	يملأ
fool (n)	شخص أحمق
hate (v) (d)	يكره
hatred (n)	كراهية
lie (v) (d)	يكذب
master (n)	سيد
ordinary (adj)	عادى
thoughts (n)	آراء/ أفكار
trap (n)	فخ/ مصيدة
triumph (n) (v) (ed)	انتصار/ ينتصر
trust (v) (ed) (n)	يثق فى/ ثقة
truth (n)	حقيقة/ صدق
wise (adj)	حكيم
wisdom (n)	حكمة

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

blanket (n)	بطانية
brave (adj)	شجاع
brilliant (adj)	متميز/ ذكى
castle (n)	قلعة
description (n)	وصف
diplomat (n)	دبلوماسى
explanation (n)	شرح/ تفسير
generous (adj)	كريم
ideal (adj)	مثالى
imaginative (adj)	خيالى/ مبدع
line (n)	سطر (شعرى)
motivation (n)	دافع/ تحفيز
old-fashioned (adj)	قديم الطراز
organised (adj)	منظم
practise (v) (d)	يمارس/ يتمرن على
rhyme (n) (v) (d)	قافية/ يتناغم
sensible (adj)	عاقل/ حكيم
teenager (n)	مراهق
understanding (adj)	متفهم
verses (n)	أبيات شعرية

Focus on Vocabulary

aim	هدف/ يهدف	what you are hoping to achieve
bear	يتحمل	bravely accept or deal with a painful or difficult situation
deal in	يتعامل/ يتاجر فى	do business with
foe	عدو/ خصم	an enemy
give way to	يسمح	allow
grow up	ينمو/ ينضج	develop from being a child to being an adult
impostor	نصاب/ محتال	someone who pretends to be someone else
inspiring	ملهم	making someone want to do or achieve something
knave	وغد/ محتال	a man who is not honest
stoop	يمشى متمايلًا/ يتنازل	walk with your head forward and down
twisted	ملتوٍ/ متغير المعنى	changed the meaning
unforgiving	قاسى القلب	difficult, not kind
virtue	فضيلة	a good moral quality that someone has



worn-out	تالف/ بال	damaged because it has been used so much
worth	مساو/ مستحق	the amount that could be produced in that time
keep your head	تحافظ على هدوئك	remain calm in a difficult situation
lose your head	تفقد أعصابك	don't remain calm in a difficult situation
make allowance for	يتساهل مع	consider someone's behaviour in a kind way because they have a problem or disadvantage
the common touch	الشعور العام (التعامل بود مع عامة الناس)	the ability to be friendly or ordinary people

Expressions & Idioms

go wrong	يسوء/ يتعطل	introduce an explanation	يقدم تفسيرًا
have meetings	لديه اجتماعات	stay calm	يبقى هادئًا
have the ability	لديه القدرة	work very well	يعمل بشكل جيد جدًا

Phrases & Prepositions

amazed by	مذهول بـ	hear of	يسمع عن
blame ... on	يضع اللوم على	lie to	يكذب على
consist of	يتكون من	return to	يرجع إلى
different from	مختلف عن	thank of	يفكر في
famous for	مشهور بـ	work for	يعمل لصالح

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
impostor	نصاب/ محتال	dodger	honest	أمين
adult	بالغ/ راشد	grown up/ mature	infant/ immature	طفل صغير/ رضيع
inspiring	ملهم	encouraging	discouraging	مثبط
stoop	يتنازل/ يخضع	descend	rise	يعلو/ يرتفع
unforgiving	قاسى القلب	cruel	tolerant	متسامح
virtue	فضيلة	ethic	vice	رذيلة
blame	يلوم	accuse	approve/ praise	يستحسن/ يثنى
disaster	كارثة	catastrophe	blessing	نعمة
doubt	يشك	confusion	certainty	تأكد
trust	ثقة	faith	disbelief	عدم ثقة
wise	حكيم	sensible	foolish	أحمق

Notes on Vocabulary

lie **lay**

lie/lied/lied/lying — يكذب

- I could tell from her face that she lied to the judge.

lie/lay/lain/lying — يرقد/ تقع

- He was lying on the bed smoking a cigarette.
- The town lies in the north of the country.

lay/laid/laid — تضع البيض

- The farmer sold all the eggs which the hens had laid.



Adjectives ending with -ed/-ing

Verb	Adjectives ending with -ed		Adjectives ending with -ing	
bore	bored	متضجر	boring	ممل
inspire	inspired	مُلهَم	inspiring	مُلهِم
frighten	frightened	خائف	frightening	مخيف

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) لوصف من/ ما وقع عليه الفعل.
- I didn't finish the film because I was bored.
- The children were very frightened when they saw the lion.

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) لوصف من/ ما سبب الفعل.
- The film was boring, so we left the cinema.
- Some scenes of the film are frightening especially for children.

لاحظ الآتى: هناك بعض الصفات تنتهى بـ ive أو ful أو التصريف الثالث للفعل مثل:

impress	impressed	متأثر	impressive	مؤثر
delight	delighted	مبتهج	delightful	مبهج
forgive	forgiven	معذور/ غير ملام	forgiving	مسامح/ غفور

Using hyphen (-)

عند استخدام بعض العبارات كصفة لاسم يتبعها فإننا نضيف شرطة (-) أو أكثر.

worn-out tools أدوات بالية	a five-year-old girl بنت عمرها خمسة أعوام
a two-and-a-half-metre-long pole عمود طوله متران ونصف	a one-metre-long snake ثعبان طوله متر
a seventeenth-century house بيت من القرن السابع عشر	a thirty-kilometre-an-hour-long wind رياح بسرعة ثلاثين كيلو مترًا فى الساعة

imaginative imaginary

imaginative خيالى (مبدع/ ابداعى)
- Noble Prizes are awarded to imaginative people who did great things.

imaginary خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)
- The story is totally imaginary, not based on real life.

local **national** **international**

local محلى(خاص بمنطقة محددة)

▸ I've just joined the local club in our small town.

national قومى(خاص ببلد أو أمة)

▸ Our national football team scored three goals in the last match.

international دولى(يتضمن التعامل مع أكثر من دولة)

▸ The island now has an international airport.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The road has been dug up in order to .... electrical cables.
a) lie b) lay
c) loop d) lip

2 This book is very .... I don't think I'll finish it.
a) bore b) bored c) boring d) boredom

3 The Davis Cup is an important .... tennis championship.
a) local b) national
c) folk d) international

4 Children usually experience a lot of .... fears at early age.
a) imaginary b) imaginative
c) imagination d) unimaginative

5 All employees in the company have three weeks and all the .... holidays off.
a) local b) national
c) folk d) international

6 We spent our holiday in a town which .... halfway between Rome and Florence.
a) lies b) lays c) loops d) lips

7 We really need a/an .... solution to the litter problem in Cairo.
a) imaginary b) imaginative
c) imagination d) unimaginative

8 Wafaa didn't want to watch the film about dinosaurs because she easily gets ....
a) frighten b) frightened
c) frightening d) fright



Listening Text

Mariam : Have you seen the film, *The Jungle Book*? It's about a boy who grows up[1] in the jungle.

Soha : I've heard of it, but I haven't seen it.

Mariam : It's a really good story. It was written by an English writer called Rudyard Kipling. I liked the film so much that I decided to read a book about the author[2]. He had an interesting life and wrote children's books, books for adults[3] and poems.

(1) ينمو / يكبر
(2) مؤلف
(3) كبار / بالغين

Soha : When did he live?

Mariam : He was born in India in 1865.

Soha : Did Kipling like India?

Mariam : Yes. Growing up in India, he developed a love of the markets and Indian people.

Soha : Where did he go to school?

Mariam : He went to school in England and became the editor of the school newspaper.

Soha : When did he start to write books?

Mariam : After he returned to India. He worked for a local newspaper, often thinking of stories in the evening.

Soha : When did he write *The Jungle Book*?

Mariam : That was a few years later. Kipling married an American woman and they built a large house in the American countryside. He wrote *The Jungle Book* there in 1894, a year after their first daughter, Josephine, was born. They then had a second daughter and a son. Kipling loved children, and children loved his books!

Soha : Did he stay in America?

Mariam : No. The family decided to return to England in 1896. They later lived in an old house in England with a big garden. Kipling enjoyed writing there. Writing stories and poems for adults and children, he became very successful.

Soha : Which is his most famous poem?

Mariam : It's a poem called "If".

Soha : What is it about?

Mariam : The speaker in the poem teaches his son what to do and what not to do to become a successful person. Reading the poem, you feel that you want to do well at everything! It's very inspiring[4]. Shall I read you my favourite part?

Soha : Yes, please.

Mariam : "If you can fill the unforgiving[5] minute
With sixty seconds' worth[6] of distance run,
Yours is the Earth and everything that's in it!"
This means that you should use your time well. If you do this, you can achieve anything.

Soha : I'd like to read all of the poem!

(4) ملهم
(5) قاسى القلب
(6) مساوٍ



Reading Text

If

If you can keep your head when all about you
Are losing theirs and blaming it on you;
If you can trust yourself when all men doubt you,
But make allowance for their doubting too:
If you can wait and not be tired by waiting,
Or, being lied about, don't deal in lies,
Or being hated don't give way to hating,
And yet don't look too good, nor talk too wise;



لو نجحت في الحفاظ على عقلك فيما كل من حولك
يفقدون عقولهم، ويلومونك على ذلك.
لو وثقت بنفسك حين يشك بك الجميع
واختلقتَ، رغم هذا، أعذارًا لشكوكهم.
لو استطعت الانتظار، ولم تسأمه
لو كذبوا عليك، ولم تنغمس في الكذب
لو كنت مكروها ولم تطلق العنان للكراهية
ولم تتخذ، رغم هذا،
صفات المفرطين في النبل
أو حديث الموغلين في الحكمة

If you can dream – and not make dreams your master;
If you can think – and not make thoughts your aim,
If you can meet with Triumph and Disaster
And treat those two impostors just the same:
If you can bear to hear the truth you've spoken
Twisted by knaves to make a trap for fools,
Or watch the things you gave your life to, broken,
And stoop and build'em up with worn-out tools;

لو استطعت أن تحلم، ولم تجعل الحلم سيدك
لو استطعت أن تفكر، ولم تجعل الفكر غايتك
لو التقيت بالظفر والهزيمة
وعاملت أولئك المخادعين على السواء
لو تحملت أن تسمع الحقائق التى خرجت من فمك
يلويها الأوغاد ليخدعوا بها الساذجين
أو تراقب ما وهبت عمرك من أجله وهو يحطَّم،
لكنك تنحنى وتشيده من جديد بما تملك من أدوات بالية

If you can talk with crowds and keep your virtue,
Or walk with Kings – nor lose the common touch,
If neither foes nor loving friends can hurt you,
If all men count on you, but none too much:
If you can fill the unforgiving minute
With sixty seconds' worth of distance run,
Yours is the Earth and everything that's in it,
And – which is more – you'll be a Man, my son!

لو استطعت التحدث مع الجموع دون أن تفقد فضيلتك
أو سرت مع الملوك ولم تفقد إحساس العامة
لو أخفق الأعداء والخلان فى إيذائك
لو حسبت لكل رجل حسابه، ولم تبالغ به
لو ملأت الدقيقة التى لا تغفر
بستين ثانية من جرى المسافات
فستكون لك الأرض وكل ما عليها
وتكون - وهذا الأهم - رجلاً، يا ولدى

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1 I liked the film so much that I decided to read a book about the author.

- نستخدم that .... so بمعنى جدًا لدرجة أن وأحيانًا يأتى بينهما صفة.

- The film was so exciting that I decided to see it again.

- نستخدم (المصدر + to) بعد الفعل (decide).

2 Yes. Growing up in India, he developed a love of the markets and Indian people.

- Writing stories and poems for adults and children, he became very successful.

- نستخدم صيغة (ing) فى الجملتين للربط بمعنى (عندما when) أو (لأن because).

3 After he returned to India, he worked for a local newspaper.

- لاحظ أنه من الممكن استخدام جملتين فى زمن الماضى البسيط بعد أداة الربط (after) .

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The *Jungle Book* is about a boy who grew .... in the jungle.
a) up b) down c) in d) off

2 Our English teacher is very .... He teaches us to do well at everything.
a) aspiring b) hostile c) inspiring d) sociable

3 I can't bear this place. The weather here is very .... in winter.
a) moderate b) forgiven c) forgiving d) unforgiving

4 Thieves broke the shop window and stole jewellery .... millions of pounds.
a) value b) useful c) worth d) view

5 I was .... every day when I first started teaching, but I'm used to it now.
a) exhaust b) exhausted c) exhausting d) exhaustion

6 Grandfather has always been a source of .... to all our family members for his great achievements.
a) aspiration b) recognition c) invention d) inspiration

7 Naguib El Mistekawy is considered one of the best sports .... in Egypt and the Arab World.
a) diplomats b) directors c) editors d) advisers

8 The field was full of diseased plants which are .... to the farmer.
a) worth b) worthy c) worthless d) worthlessness

9 Our teacher .... allowance for our friend and gave him extra time to answer the exam as he missed the school bus.
a) took b) did c) brought d) made

10 The lady asked the servant to make the water as hot as the baby can ....
a) enable b) risk c) bear d) dislike

11 A/An .... is someone who pretends to be someone else.
a) editor b) knave c) foe d) impostor

12 The .... of this lesson is to practise speaking English.
a) cause b) imposter c) aim d) reason

13 As a scientist, he does not .... in guessing. He is interested in research.
a) trade b) treat c) sell d) deal

14 Helping other people is a .... we should train our children on.
a) virtue b) vice c) risk d) task

15 Smoking and unhealthy food are the most serious .... of humans.
a) fees b) fares c) fumes d) foes

16 The boy is wearing a pair of .... jeans as he is very poor.
a) modern b) new c) worn-out d) astonished

17 The door of the lab wasn't high enough, so I had to ....
a) stoop b) debt c) walk d) run

18 My parents always advise me not to .... my head in difficult situations.
a) keep b) lose c) win d) miss

19 Messi missed the first game of the season because of a .... ankle.
a) brave b) wasted c) valuable d) twisted

20 Ministers and politicians are always careful not to lose the .... touch.
a) general b) strange c) common d) private

21 My teacher warned me that the man I met in the street was not honest saying that he was a/an ....
a) prince b) knave c) assistant d) knight

22 We grew up in the ...., surrounded by fresh and beautiful fields.
a) desert b) beach c) shore d) countryside

23 The Amazon .... in South America has places that haven't been explored yet.
a) jungle b) park c) space d) station

24 It is believed that poets and painters are true lovers of ....
a) power b) force c) nature d) strength

25 You shouldn't .... all your problems on your family.
a) reward b) blame c) accuse d) award

26 The earthquake was a terrible .... that caused thousands of deaths.
a) aspire b) incident c) blessing d) disaster

27 The police .... the man because he suddenly bought an expensive house.
a) doubted b) assured c) risked d) concluded

28 Many people can fall into the .... of putting work before family.

a) tower b) trap c) tunnel d) trip

29 On October 6th we celebrate our .... over our enemy.

a) loss b) disaster c) triumph d) battle

30 My son promised that he would never .... to me again.

a) trust b) lie c) cheat d) trick

31 My uncle has worked as a .... in many Egyptian embassies around the world.

a) fighter b) programmer c) politician d) diplomat

32 Using .... is very popular in poetry of all languages.

a) draft b) note c) rhyme d) song

33 It would be .... to ask your parents for advice about your problems.

a) sensible b) sensitive c) unwise d) affecting

34 Wearing a hat has become .... in many countries. Very few people do that.

a) old-fashioned b) modern c) stylish d) customary

35 The teacher asked us to learn the first two .... of the poem by heart.

a) numbers b) notes c) secrets d) verses

36 You made a .... decision when you chose to study in this great university.

a) sensitive b) wise c) rash d) risky

37 Everyone has a true friend who they .... for their secrets.

a) cheat b) trick c) trust d) lie

38 The police refused to .... an explanation for arresting the men.

a) demand b) ask c) perform d) introduce

39 My father couldn't .... calm when he saw the children wasting their time.

a) lose b) stay c) continue d) get

40 If you follow the easy instructions, your project really can't .... wrong.

a) apply b) come c) go d) invent

41 Students are always in need of a good .... to continue their studies.

a) motivation b) innovation c) adventure d) risk

42 This car is so expensive that .... people can't afford it.

a) wealthy b) ordinary c) rich d) extraordinary

43 The .... of money father gives me isn't enough for food and transport.

a) quality b) account c) amount d) type

44 Many people now look for medicines made of .... materials such as plants.

a) artificial b) synthetic c) sensitive d) natural

45 A/An .... is a person who isn't very intelligent and can be cheated easily.

a) knave b) imposter c) fool d) inventor

46 The company makes many devices to help people reach their .... weight.

a) ideal b) idle c) fake d) false

47 Scientists are trying to provide .... solutions to environmental problems.

a) imaginary b) imaginative c) unimaginative d) strange

48 You can trust Wafaa as she always .... the truth about everything.

a) denies b) devises c) hides d) tells

49 The woman gave an accurate .... of the man who stole her bag.

a) prescription b) exception c) description d) inspection

50 I always refuse to blame my mistakes .... other people.

a) for b) on c) at d) in

Open General Exercises (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Most Facebook advertisements are specifically.................. at young people.

a) sold b) aimed c) expected d) devised

2 Building the New Capital in Egypt took a great .... of time and effort.

a) part b) quality c) quantity d) deal

3 I told my son not to .... to any bad student's level and to avoid him completely.

a) stoop b) stop c) rise d) start

4 Any footballer .... his salt would love to play for his country.

a) having b) bearing c) worth d) costly

5 My friend's father gives him a monthly .... of 700 pounds.

a) wage b) allowance c) fare d) fee

6 I had a long summer holiday so I thought I'd make a/an .... of necessity by taking useful courses.

a) vice b) value c) virtue d) ethic

7 With all these old branches and weeds, our garden is a real ....

a) threat b) triumph c) fair d) jungle

8 Teachers cannot be expected to .... all the blame for poor exam results.

a) take b) give c) design d) suffer

9 Since you will .... most of the responsibility, you should get the rewards.

a) exercise b) enjoy c) bear d) clear

10 I've been working all day and I'm worn ....

a) away b) out c) off d) down

Grammar

Participle clauses

عبارات اسم الفاعل

Participle clauses are groups of words which begin with a verb in the -ing form. These clauses can come before or after the main part of a sentence.

عبارات اسم الفاعل هى مجموعة من الكلمات التى تنتهى بـ ing - وهذه العبارات تأتى قبل أو بعد الجملة الرئيسية.

Usage

الاستخدام

1. Use participle clauses instead of clauses starting with "as" or "when":

نستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل لاستبدال الجمل التى بها When/As/While/After وبعدها فاعل وفعل.

- As Sara was walking to town yesterday, she saw two of her school friends.
- Walking to town yesterday, Sara saw two of her school friends.
- When they arrived home late, they found that the door was locked.
- Arriving home late, they found that the door was locked.

2. Participle clauses can also be used instead of clauses starting with "and".

نستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلًا من الجمل التى تبدأ بـ and:

- The bird flew away and made a very loud noise.
- The bird flew away, making a very loud noise.

3. The subject of the participle clause must be the same as the subject of the main clause:

فاعل عبارة اسم الفاعل يجب أن يكون هو نفس الفاعل للجملة الرئيسية.

- I heard the phone ring and I picked it up.
- Hearing the phone ring, I picked it up.
- The car crashed into a garden and knocked down a tree.
- The car crashed into a garden, knocking down a tree.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 .... in his garden, Kipling wrote some wonderful stories.

a) To work b) Worked c) Working d) Being working

2 .... home late one night, Nasser apologised to his father.

a) Arriving b) Arrived c) Arrive d) To arrive

3 .... there was going to be a storm, Mr Zaher stayed at home.

a) Realise b) Realising c) Realised d) To realise



- .... out of the window this morning, I saw two boys fighting fiercely.
  a) To look b) Looked c) Look d) Looking
- .... up early, Mike decided to go for a walk in the hills.
  a) To wake b) Wake c) Waking d) Woke
- .... in the shade, we ate cake and drank coffee.
  a) To Sit b) Sit c) sitting d) Sat
- Mr Hassan divided his class into three groups, ... each group a job.
  a) give b) giving c) gave d) given
- .... the bus, I ran to the bus stop very quickly.
  a) Seeing b) Saw c) See d) Seen
- After .... to the doctor, I felt much better.
  a) spoke b) speak c) spoken d) Speaking
- Before .... a decision, I need to discuss the problem with you.
  a) made b) make c) making d) being made

Extra Points

1. To replace a clause of reason (because, as, since + subject + verb).

– تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلًا من جمل السببية (because, as, since).

- Because I felt extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.
- Feeling extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.

2. To replace a relative clause in the active voice.

– لاستبدال عبارة موصولة فى المبنى للمعلوم.

- The boy who is talking to Jim is my brother.
- The boy talking to Jim is my brother.

3. To form the negative of participles, we add "not" before the participles.

– لصياغة النفى من اسم الفاعل أو اسم المفعول به فإننا نضيف not قبلهما.

- Not wanting to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop.

4. After the verbs of sensation: see, hear, feel, smell, listen, watch and notice.

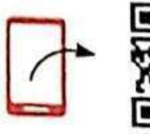
– بعد أفعال الشعور والإحساس السابقة لتعبر عن رؤية أو سماع جزء من الحدث، وعند سماع أو رؤية الحدث كاملًا نستخدم المصدر.

- I saw my neighbours leaving the house early this morning.

5. After: catch, find, leave, go, come, spend time, waste time and be busy:

- He was busy painting the room.
- They wasted the time playing cards.
- I left my children doing their homework.

لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على




Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... to his friends, he forgot everything around him.
   a) To talk b) Talk c) Talking d) Talked
2. .... vegetarians, they don't eat meat.
   a) To be b) Been c) Be d) Being
3. Ahmed got the best marks .... all his teachers.
   a) thanking b) thanked c) and thanking d) thank
4. I led the blind man through the crowd .... his hand.
   a) hold b) holding c) held d) being held
5. He told her not to eat it, ... that there was a risk of food poisoning.
   a) to explain b) explained c) explaining d) explain
6. .... happy with my results, I decided to go out and celebrate.
   a) Being b) To be c) Been d) Be
7. .... up in India, he developed a love of the markets and Indian people.
   a) Grow b) To grow c) Growing d) Grew
8. .... stories and poems for adults and children, Kipling became very successful.
   a) To write b) Writing c) Wrote d) Written
9. .... the poem, you feel that you want to do well at everything!
   a) Being read b) Read c) To read d) Reading
10. .... the top of the hill, he was amazed by the wonderful view.
    a) Reached b) To reach c) Reach d) Reaching
11. .... out his notebook, he began to write a poem.
    a) To take b) Taking c) Took d) Take
12. .... the black clouds, Mike continued driving his car.
    a) Not noticing b) To notice c) Noticed d) Notice
13. .... the first drops of rain, he began to run back down the hill.
    a) Felt b) To feel c) Feeling d) Feel
14. .... at his front door, Mike discovered that he had forgotten to take his key with him.
    a) To arrive b) Arriving c) Arrived d) Arrive
15. .... into town, the man saw an accident.
    a) To drive b) Drove c) Drive d) Driving

16 Sara looked out of the window .... two cats fighting.
a) and seeing b) seeing c) saw d) to see

17 Lamia took a good book to read .... it was a long, boring journey.
a) knowing b) as known c) she knew d) to know

18 .... my name at the top of my work, I gave it to the teacher.
a) Wrote b) To write c) Writing d) Write

19 .... on my computer, I discovered that it wasn't working.
a) Turning b) Turn c) To turn d) Turned

20 .... the bus I wanted to catch, I ran to the bus stop.
a) See b) Seeing c) To see d) Saw

21 Omar threw the ball, ... 2 glasses full of lemonade on the table.
a) breaking b) break c) broke d) to break

22 .... in the sun, I fell asleep and realised nothing.
a) Lay b) To lie c) Lie d) Lying

23 I saw my boss while .... in front of his house.
a) was parking b) park c) parking d) to park

24 The students sat in the class without a teacher .... a lot of noise.
a) make b) making c) to make d) made

25 .... to tell the truth, the young boy made up an excuse.
a) Wanting b) To want c) Wanted d) Not wanting

26 .... through the things in my bag, I found the passport which I thought I had lost.
a) Looking b) To look c) Looked d) To looking

27 .... the road, I was nearly knocked down by a car.
a) To cross b) Crossed c) Crossing d) Cross

28 .... my father in the garden, I hurried to help him with the work.
a) To find b) Finding c) Found d) Not finding

29 .... sick, our teacher left school early.
a) Feel b) To feel c) Felt d) Feeling

30 .... the good news of my success, I told my parents who congratulated me.
a) Heard b) Hearing c) To hear d) To hearing

31 .... to lose my passport, I gave it to my wife to put it in her bag.
a) Wanting b) To want c) Not wanting d) Wanted

32 .... the news daily, we know what's going on all over the world.
a) Watching b) To watch c) Watched d) being watched

33 .... a good boy, he helped his mother in the kitchen.
a) Is b) Be c) Being d) Been

34 .... enough money, they couldn't furnish the flat properly.
a) Have b) Had c) Having d) Not having

35 My uncle was sitting at the café .... a paper.
a) being read b) read c) was reading d) reading

36 .... on the highway, one must be careful.
a) To drive b) Driving c) Being driven d) Drive

37 .... the door, she saw a couple of policemen.
a) Opening b) When opened c) To open d) Opened

38 The children went from house to house .... trick or treat.
a) To play b) were playing c) played d) playing

39 Do something. Don't just stand there .... nothing.
a) to do b) doing c) done d) do

40 .... to know what the homework was, Hany phoned a friend and asked him.
a) Need b) Needed c) To need d) Needing

41 .... at the scene of the crime, he was accused of committing the crime.
a) Being seen b) Seeing c) Having seen d) To see

42 .... at him loudly, my son left the room and began to cry.
a) Shouting b) Shouted c) Not shouting d) Shout

43 .... to go out that evening, I made an excuse.
a) Preferred b) Not prefer c) Preferring not d) Preferring

44 .... to the party, we could hardly refuse to go.
a) Invite b) Inviting
c) Having invited d) Having been invited

45 .... a new car, my father started saving money a year ago.
a) Buying b) To buy c) Having bought d) Bought

46 .... the bad news, Nahla sat down and cried.
a) Telling b) Having told c) Having been told d) To tell

47 .... in dark colours, the room needed some bright lights.
a) Having been painted b) Having painted
c) Painting d) To be painted

48 .... to wake my father, I left the house silently.
a) Wanting b) Wanting not c) Not being wanted d) Not wanting

49 My watch was among the things .... last week.
a) stealing b) stolen c) steal d) stole

50 .... Arabic, John found life in Egypt difficult.
a) Don't speak b) Doesn't speak c) Speaking d) Not speaking

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: Where is Judy? B: She won't be here .... 8 o'clock.
   a) after b) until c) by the time d) on
2. The guide showed the tourists the house .... Charles Dickens died.
   a) that b) which c) where d) when
3. Someone has taken my cassette recorder. I don't know .... would do a thing like that.
   a) who b) what c) why d) which
4. I've been working .... all day and I'm exhausted.
   a) the hardest b) hardly c) harder d) hard
5. .... he is nearly eighty, he is still very active.
   a) Even b) Although c) Despite d) However
6. I'm taking the umbrella. It .... rain.
   a) should b) must c) may d) has to
7. Sherook was cooking dinner in the kitchen while Shady .... the dog.
   a) was feeding b) is feeding c) has been feeding d) had been feeding
8. You can't leave the table until you .... your dinner.
   a) had finished b) finished c) will finish d) finish
9. Don't phone me tonight. I .... for my French exam.
   a) study b) will be studying c) will study d) will have studied
10. Hady was sunburnt because he .... on the beach for 6 hours.
    a) is sitting b) has been sitting c) had been sitting d) has sat

Communication Skills

لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Talking about dreams and ideals الحديث عن الأحلام والمثاليات

Asking about dreams and ideals	Answers
• What would your dream job be?	• My dream job would be ...... because ...
• If you could have any job you liked, what would you choose?	• I'd choose to be ....
• Would you prefer to be (a leader) or (a member of a team)?	• I'd definitely be .... ,
	• I'd really like to be ....
	• I could/couldn't be a ...... because .....

Writing: An Egyptian Poet - Ahmed Shawqi

Ahmed Shawki, nicknamed Prince of Poets, was one of the greatest Arabic poets laureate. He was an Egyptian poet who was one of the most important figures of classical Arab poets. He also was one of the first Arab poets to write poetic plays.

Shawqi was born in Egypt in 1870. He grew up in Cairo to a wealthy family. He studied law and graduated in 1887. The ruler of the Egyptian government sent him to study translation and law in France in 1893. During his stay in France, he began to admire French theatre and poetry. He returned to Egypt and continued writing.

He kept a close friendship with Egyptian patriotic وطنى leaders such as Mustafa Kamel. In 1915, he was sent to exile المنفى in Spain. He returned back to Egypt in 1920. The writings of Ahmed Shawqi are rich and varied. He wrote religious, patriotic, historic poems, as well as the distinctive plays he wrote in poetry. Some of the works of Ahmed Shawqi are still taught at schools.

Skills EXercises

1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

1. How can stories about national heroes inspire young people?
2. The role of literature in spreading virtues among people.

2 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The life of Taha Hussein has always inspired people to improve their lives. His blindness didn't hinder him from great achievements.
2. Students need continuous motivation to excel in their studies. Studying stories and specific poems can help them do so.
3. Education is considered the cornerstone to achieve progress in all fields. That's schools must be attractive places suitable for educational reform.
4. Salah Jaheen was an Egyptian poet who developed the style of contemporary Egyptian poetry. Many of his poems were made into songs.
5. Why do we no longer think of the beauty of nature or stop to enjoy an attractive scene? Did modern technology really change our nature?
6. The Egyptian history is full of great authors who have a great effect on Arab literature and culture.



B) Translate into English:

١ - الأحلام لا تتحقق دائمًا لذا يجب أن تكون مستعدًا لأن تغير تطلعاتك في المستقبل.
٢ - يلعب الشعر دورًا مهمًا في ترقية المشاعر وتنمية الذوق العام لدى الكبار والصغار.
٣ - تهتم مصر بتطوير علاقاتها مع الدول الإفريقية لما تمثله من أهمية اقتصادية لكلا الجانبين.
٤ - رغم التطور التكنولوجي الكبير إلا أن العلم يقف عاجزًا أمام الكوارث الطبيعية كالأعاصير والزلازل.
٥ - قد تؤدي الخلافات والصراعات الفكرية إلى آثار وخيمة على استقرار الأسر والمجتمعات في العالم.
٦ - لا يعتقد كثير من الشباب أن الأدب يمكن أن يلعب دورًا في تطوير المجتمع ودفعه للأمام.

Enrich your Vocabulary

conflicts	الصراعات	motivation	دافع / حافز
contemporary	معاصر	promoting	ترقية
cornerstone	حجر الزاوية	public taste	الذوق العام
excel	يتميز	stability	استقرار
feelings	مشاعر	style	أسلوب
hurricanes	أعاصير	literature	الأدب





Test 8 Based on Unit 16

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The poor child said that he faced .... conditions after his father's death.
   a) forgive b) forgiven c) forgiveness d) unforgiving
2. My father always .... allowance for my little brother who is very young.
   a) makes b) gives c) does d) takes
3. Honesty is an important .... which we should keep in our life.
   a) vice b) virtue c) risk d) value
4. The gardener always complains of the .... tools he uses saying that he needs better ones.
   a) modern b) new c) worn-out d) astonished
5. The two companies have recently done a big .... to import goods.
   a) deal b) amount c) ceremony d) concert
6. My grandfather is very old and is now .... with age.
   a) stopped b) tricked c) stooped d) cheated
7. .... plenty of time to spare, I had a good look around the town.
   a) Having b) Not having c) Had d) To have
8. The child sat at the desk .... a picture.
   a) painted b) having painted
   c) painting d) paints
9. .... the money through hard work, it wasn't easy for him to give it away.
   a) Earning b) Having earned
   c) Earned d) Being earned
10. She stood at the corner .... to her friends.
    a) has talked b) talks c) talked d) talking
11. .... all the evidence, he refused to be a witness to the crime.
    a) Saw b) Seeing c) Not seeing d) To see
12. .... a key out of his pocket, he opened the door.
    a) Take b) Takes c) Not taking d) Taking
13. .... the news on TV every day, we know what's going on in the world.
    a) Watched b) Watch c) Being watching d) Watching
14. .... happy, they decided to have lunch outside.
    a) Been b) Were c) Be d) Being

15 While .... up her room, she found some old photos.
a) tidied b) tidying c) tidy d) being tidy

16 .... enough money, they spent their holidays at home last year.
a) Not having b) Having c) Had d) Being having

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You use energy every day. Energy is the ability to cause change. Any time you move, you are using energy. When you bounce a ball or ride a bike, you use energy from your body to make the ball or the bike move. Your parents cook food for you to eat. They use heat energy to change the food from raw to cooked. Not all energy is used as soon as you get it. Sometimes energy is stored to be used later. Stored energy can be chemical energy stored in a battery or in your body. It can also be potential energy. Potential energy is based on the position of the object. A ball at the top of a hill has potential energy. A soccer player standing ready to kick a ball has potential energy, too.

Energy of motion is also called kinetic energy. Potential energy converts, or changes into, kinetic energy when the thing or person begins to move. When the ball starts rolling down hill, kinetic energy is at work. When the soccer player kicks the ball, kinetic energy is at work there, too. Energy often changes forms. When you switch on the light, electricity converts into light. When you eat, chemical energy from your food converts into thermal and mechanical energy that allows you to move and work.

When you switch on a cell phone, chemical energy from the cell phone's battery converts into sound energy and light energy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Energy is ....
a) the ability to bounce a ball b) the ability to cause change.
c) the ability to ride a bike d) the ability to switch on the light

18 The other meaning to "change" from the passage is ....
a) bounce b) kick c) store d) convert

19 Energy that is based on an object's position is called ....
a) potential energy b) kinetic energy c) thermal energy d) mechanical energy

20 The antonym of the word "raw" is ....
a) uncooked b) fresh c) cooked d) natural

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What is another name for energy of motion?

22 What happens when the thing or person begins to move?

23 What do you think the sources of energy we will use in the future?

24 Mention two ways by which we can save energy.

25 Translate into Arabic:

Winning international competitions is one of the ways to relieve the frustration of hard life. It can also be used to enhance patriotism of people.

26 Translate into English:

- يعتبر علماء النفس أن الاستمتاع بالشعر والفن الراقى أحد المظاهر التى تميز المجتمع المتحضر، كما يؤكد ذلك على مدى الثقافة الراقية لدى أفراده.

27 Write an e-mail of about 180 words:

To your friend Wafaa telling her about a reading competition on famous writers you are going to take part in and asking her for suggestions. Your name is Nourhan.